

PE
135
564
1898

PE
135
S64
1898

HART MEMORIAL
LIBRARY

CORNELL UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

ENGLISH COLLECTION



THE GIFT OF
JAMES MORGAN HART
PROFESSOR OF ENGLISH

A.294537

Cornell University Library
PE 135.S64 1898

Old English grammar and exercise book :



3 1924 027 322 951

olin



Cornell University Library

The original of this book is in
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in
the United States on the use of the text.

AN
OLD ENGLISH
GRAMMAR AND EXERCISE BOOK

WITH
INFLECTIONS, SYNTAX, SELECTIONS FOR
READING, AND GLOSSARY

BY
C. ALPHONSO SMITH, A.M., PH.D.
PROFESSOR OF ENGLISH IN THE LOUISIANA STATE UNIVERSITY

NEW EDITION
REVISED AND ENLARGED

Boston
ALLYN AND BACON
1898
n
s

A.294537

COPYRIGHT, 1896, BY

C. ALPHONSO SMITH.

Norwood Press

J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith
Norwood Mass. U.S.A.

PREFACE.

THE scope of this book is indicated in § 5. It is intended for beginners, and in writing it, these words of Sir Thomas Elyot have not been forgotten: "Grammer, beinge but an introduction to the understandinge of autors, if it be made to longe or exquisite to the lerner, it in a maner mortifieth his corage: And by that time he cometh to the most swete and pleasant redinge of olde autors, the sparkes of fervent desire of lernynge are extincte with the burdone of grammer, lyke as a lyttell fyre is sone quenched with a great heape of small stickes." — *The Governour*, Cap. X.

Only the essentials, therefore, are treated in this work, which is planned more as a foundation for the study of Modern English grammar, of historical English grammar, and of the principles of English etymology, than as a general introduction to Germanic philology.

The Exercises in translation will, it is believed, furnish all the drill necessary to enable the student to retain the forms and constructions given in the various chapters.

The Selections for Reading relate to the history and literature of King Alfred's day, and are sufficient to give the student a first-hand, though brief, acquaintance with the native style and idiom of Early West Saxon prose in its golden age. Most of the words and constructions contained in them will be already familiar to the student through their intentional employment in the Exercises.

For the inflectional portion of this grammar, recourse

has been had chiefly to Sievers' *Abriss der angelsächsischen Grammatik* (1895). Constant reference has been made also to the same author's earlier and larger *Angelsächsische Grammatik*, translated by Cook. A more sparing use has been made of Cosijn's *Altwestsächsische Grammatik*.

For syntax and illustrative sentences, Dr. J. E. Wülfig's *Syntax in den Werken Alfreds des Grossen, Part I.* (Bonn, 1894) has proved indispensable. Advance sheets of the second part of this great work lead one to believe that when completed the three parts will constitute the most important contribution to the study of English syntax that has yet been made. Old English sentences have also been cited from Sweet's *Anglo-Saxon Reader*, Bright's *Anglo-Saxon Reader*, and Cook's *First Book in Old English*.

The short chapter on the Order of Words has been condensed from my *Order of Words in Anglo-Saxon Prose* (Publications of the Modern Language Association of America, New Series, Vol. I, No. 2).

Though assuming sole responsibility for everything contained in this book, I take pleasure in acknowledging the kind and efficient assistance that has been so generously given me in its preparation. To none do I owe more than to Dr. J. E. Wülfig, of the University of Bonn; Prof. James A. Harrison, of the University of Virginia; Prof. W. S. Currell, of Washington and Lee University; Prof. J. Douglas Bruce, of Bryn Mawr College; and Prof. L. M. Harris, of the University of Indiana. They have each rendered material aid, not only in the tedious task of detecting typographical errors in the proof-sheets, but by the valuable criticisms and suggestions which they have made as this work was passing through the press.

C. ALPHONSO SMITH.

LOUISIANA STATE UNIVERSITY,
BATON ROUGE, September, 1896.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.



IN preparing this enlarged edition, a few minor errors in the first edition have been corrected and a few sentences added. The chief difference between the two editions, however, consists in the introduction of more reading matter and the consequent exposition of Old English meter. Both changes have been made at the persistent request of teachers and students of Old English.

Uniformity of treatment has been studiously preserved in the new material and the old, the emphasis in both being placed on syntax and upon the affinities that Old English shares with Modern English.

Many obligations have been incurred in preparing this augmented edition. I have again to thank Dr. J. E. Wülfing, Prof. James A. Harrison, Prof. W. S. Currell, and Prof. J. Douglas Bruce. To the scholarly criticisms also of Prof. J. M. Hart, of Cornell; Prof. Frank Jewett Mather, Jr., of Williams College; and Prof. Frederick Tupper, Jr., of the University of Vermont, I am indebted for aid as generously given as it is genuinely appreciated.

C. ALPHONSO SMITH.

August, 1898.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.



PART I.—INTRODUCTION.

Chapters	Pages
I. History (§ 1-5)	1
II. Sounds (§ 6-11)	4
III. Inflections (§ 12-19)	10
IV. Order of Words (§ 20-21)	18
V. Practical Suggestions (§ 22-24)	21

PART II.—ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX.

VI. The a-Declension: Masculine a-Stems (§ 25-30) . .	27
VII. Neuter a-Stems (§ 31-36)	30
VIII. The ð-Declension (§ 37-42)	33
IX. The i-Declension and the u-Declension (§ 43-55) . .	35
X. Present Indicative Endings of Strong Verbs (§ 56-62)	39
XI. The Weak or n-Declension (§ 63-66)	44
XII. Remnants of Other Consonant Declensions (§ 67-71)	47
XIII. Pronouns (§ 72-77)	50
XIV. Adjectives, Strong and Weak (§ 78-87)	53
XV. Numerals (§ 88-92)	57
XVI. Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions (§ 93-95)	60
XVII. Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs (§ 96-100)	64
XVIII. Strong Verbs: Class I, Syntax of Moods (§ 101-108)	68
XIX. Classes II and III (§ 109-113)	74

Chapters		Pages
XX.	Classes IV, V, VI, and VII; Contract Verbs (§ 114-121)	78
XXI.	Weak Verbs (§ 122-133)	82
XXII.	Remaining Verbs; Verb Phrases with habban , bēon , and weorðan (§ 134-143)	90

PART III. — SELECTIONS FOR READING.

PROSE.

	Introductory	98
I.	The Battle of Ashdown	99
II.	A Prayer of King Alfred	101
III.	The Voyages of Ohthere and Wulfstan	102
	Ohthere's First Voyage	103
	Ohthere's Second Voyage	106
	Wulfstan's Voyage	107
IV.	The Story of Cædmon	111
V.	Alfred's Preface to the Pastoral Care	116

POETRY.

	Introductory	122
VI.	Extracts from Beowulf	136
VII.	The Wanderer	148

GLOSSARIES.

I.	Old English — Modern English	155
II.	Modern English — Old English	190

OLD ENGLISH GRAMMAR AND EXERCISE BOOK.



PART I.



INTRODUCTION.



CHAPTER I.

HISTORY.

1. The history of the English language falls naturally into three periods; but these periods blend into one another so gradually that too much significance must not be attached to the exact dates which scholars, chiefly for convenience of treatment, have assigned as their limits. Our language, it is true, has undergone many and great changes; but its continuity has never been broken, and its individuality has never been lost.

2. The first of these periods is that of OLD ENGLISH, or ANGLO-SAXON,¹ commonly known as the period of *full*

¹ This unfortunate nomenclature is due to the term *Angli Saxones*, which Latin writers used as a designation for the English Saxons as distinguished from the continental or Old Saxons. But Alfred and Ælfric both use the term *Englisc*, not Anglo-Saxon. The Angles spread over Northumbria and Mercia, far outnumbering the other tribes. Thus *Englisc* (= *Angel* + *isc*) became the general name for the language spoken.

inflections. *E.g.* **stān-as**, *stones*; **car-u**, *care*; **will-a**, *will*; **bind-an**, *to bind*; **help-að** (= *ath*), *they help*.

It extends from the arrival of the English in Great Britain to about one hundred years after the Norman Conquest, —from A.D. 449 to 1150; but there are no literary remains of the earlier centuries of this period. There were four¹ distinct dialects spoken at this time. These were the Northumbrian, spoken north of the river Humber; the Mercian, spoken in the midland region between the Humber and the Thames; the West Saxon, spoken south and west of the Thames; and the Kentish, spoken in the neighborhood of Canterbury. Of these dialects, Modern English is most nearly akin to the Mercian; but the best known of them is the West Saxon. It was in the West Saxon dialect that King Alfred (849–901) wrote and spoke. His writings belong to the period of Early West Saxon as distinguished from the period of Late West Saxon, the latter being best represented in the writings of Abbot Ælfric (955?–1025?).

3. The second period is that of MIDDLE ENGLISH, or the period of *leveled inflections*, the dominant vowel of the inflections being *e*. *E.g.* **ston-es**, *care-e*, **will-e**, **bind-en** (or **bind-e**), **help-eth**, each being, as in the earlier period, a dissyllable.

The Middle English period extends from A.D. 1150 to 1500. Its greatest representatives are Chaucer (1340–1400) in poetry and Wiclif (1324–1384) in prose. There were three prominent dialects during this period: the Northern, corresponding to the older Northumbrian; the Midland

¹ As small as England is, there are six distinct dialects spoken in her borders to-day. Of these the Yorkshire dialect is, perhaps, the most peculiar. It preserves many Northumbrian survivals. See Tennyson's *Northern Farmer*.

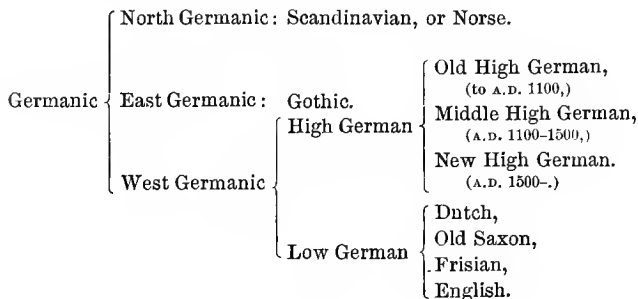
(divided into East Midland and West Midland), corresponding to the Mercian; and the Southern, corresponding to the West Saxon and Kentish. London, situated in East Midland territory, had become the dominant speech center; and it was this East Midland dialect that both Chaucer and Wiclif employed.

NOTE.— It is a great mistake to think that Chaucer shaped our language from crude materials. His influence was conservative, not plastic. The popularity of his works tended to crystalize and thus to perpetuate the forms of the East Midland dialect, but that dialect was ready to his hand before he began to write. The speech of London was, in Chaucer's time, a mixture of Southern and Midland forms, but the Southern forms (survivals of the West Saxon dialect) had already begun to fall away; and this they continued to do, so that "Chaucer's language," as Dr. Murray says, "is more Southern than standard English eventually became." See also Morsbach, *Ueber den Ursprung der neuenglischen Schriftsprache* (1888).

4. The last period is that of MODERN ENGLISH, or the period of *lost inflections*. *E.g. stones, care, will, bind, help*, each being a monosyllable. Modern English extends from A.D. 1500 to the present time. It has witnessed comparatively few grammatical changes, but the vocabulary of our language has been vastly increased by additions from the classical languages. Vowels, too, have shifted their values.

5. It is the object of this book to give an elementary knowledge of Early West Saxon, that is, the language of King Alfred. With this knowledge, it will not be difficult for the student to read Late West Saxon, or any other dialect of the Old English period. Such knowledge will also serve as the best introduction to the structure both of Middle English and of Modern English, besides laying a secure foundation for the scientific study of any other Germanic tongue.

NOTE. — The Germanic, or Teutonic, languages constitute a branch of the great Aryan, or Indo-Germanic (known also as the Indo-European) group. They are subdivided as follows:



CHAPTER II.

SOUNDS.

Vowels and Diphthongs.

6. The long vowels and diphthongs will in this book be designated by the macron (ˉ). Vowel length should in every case be associated by the student with each word learned: quantity alone sometimes distinguishes words meaning wholly different things: *fōr*, *he went*, *for*, *for*; *gōd*, *good*, *god*, *God*; *mān*, *crime*, *man*, *man*.

Long vowels and diphthongs:

ā as in *father*: *stān*, *a stone*.

ǣ as in *man* (prolonged): *slǣpan*, *to sleep*.

ē as in *they*: *hēr*, *here*.

ī as in *machine*: *mīn*, *mine*.

ō as in *note* (pure, not diphthongal): *bōc*, *book*.

ū as in rule: **tūn**, *town*.

ȳ as in German *grün*, or English *green* (with lips rounded):¹ **brȳd**, *bride*.

The diphthongs, long and short, have the stress upon the first vowel. The second vowel is obscured, and represents approximately the sound of *er* in *sooner*, *faster* (= *soon-uh*, *fast-uh*). The long diphthongs (**æ** is not a diphthong proper) are **ēo**, **īe**, and **ēa**. The sound of **ēo** is approximately reproduced in *mayor* (= *mā-uh*); that of **īe** in the dissyllabic pronunciation of *fear* (= *fē-uh*). But **ēa** = *æ-uh*. This diphthong is hardly to be distinguished from *ea* in *pear*, *bear*, etc., as pronounced in the southern section of the United States (= *bæ-uh*, *pæ-uh*).

7. The short sounds are nothing more than the long vowels and diphthongs shortened; but the student must at once rid himself of the idea that Modern English *red*, for example, is the shortened form of *reed*, or that *mat* is the shortened form of *mate*. Pronounce these long sounds with increasing rapidity, and *reed* will approach *rid*, while *mate* will approach *met*. The Old English short vowel sounds are:

a as in *artistic*: **habban**, *to have*.

æ as in *mankind*: **dæg**, *day*.

e, ȅ as in *let*: **stelan**, *to steal*, **sęttan**, *to set*.

i as in *sit*: **hit**, *it*.

o as in *broad* (but shorter): **god**, *God*.

ƿ as in *not*: **lƿmb**, *lamb*.

u as in *full*: **sunu**, *son*.

y as in *müller* (with lips rounded)¹: **gylden**, *golden*.

¹ Vowels are said to be round, or rounded, when the lip-opening is rounded; that is, when the lips are thrust out and puckered as if

NOTE. — The symbol **ę** is known as *umlaut-e* (§ 58). It stands for Germanic *a*, while **e** (without the cedilla) represents Germanic *e*. The symbol **q** is employed only before **m** and **n**. It, too, represents Germanic *a*. But Alfred writes **manig** or **monig**, *many*; **lamb** or **lomb**, *lamb*; **hand** or **hond**, *hand*, etc. The cedilla is an etymological sign added by modern grammarians.

Consonants.

8. There is little difference between the values of Old English consonants and those of Modern English. The following distinctions, however, require notice :

The digraph **th** is represented in Old English texts by **ð** and **þ**, no consistent distinction being made between them. In the works of Alfred, **ð** (capital, **Ð**) is the more common : **ðās**, *those*; **ðæt**, *that*; **bindeð**, *he binds*.

The consonant **c** had the hard sound of *k*, the latter symbol being rare in West Saxon : **cyning**, *king*; **cwēn**, *queen*; **cūð**, *known*. When followed by a palatal vowel sound, — *e*, *i*, *æ*, *ea*, *eo*, long or short, — a vanishing *y* sound was doubtless interposed (*cf.* dialectic *kʸind* for *kind*). In Modern English the combination has passed into *ch* : **cealc**, *chalk*; **cīdan**, *to chide*; **læce**, *leech*; **cild**, *child*; **cēowan**, *to chew*. This change (*c* > *ch*) is known as Palatalization. The letter **g**, pronounced as in Modern English *gun*, has also a palatal value before the palatal vowels (*cf.* dialectic *gʸirl* for *girl*).

The combination **cg**, which frequently stands for **gg**, had probably the sound of *dge* in Modern English *edge* : **ęcg**, *edge*; **sęcgan**, *to say*; **brycg**, *bridge*.

preparing to pronounce *w*. Thus *o* and *u* are round vowels: add *-ing* to each, and phonetically you have added *-wing*. *E.g.* *goʷing*, *suʷing*.

Initial **h** is sounded as in Modern English: **habban**, *to have*; **hālgā**, *saint*. When closing a syllable it has the sound of German *ch*: **slōh**, *he slew*; **hēah**, *high*; **þurh**, *through*.

9. An important distinction is that between voiced (or sonant) and voiceless (or surd) consonants.¹ In Old English they are as follows:

VOICED.	VOICELESS.
g	h, c
d	t
ð, þ (as in <i>though</i>)	θ, þ (as in <i>thin</i>)
b	p
f (= <i>v</i>)	f
s (= <i>z</i>)	s

It is evident, therefore, that **ð** (**þ**), **f**, and **s** have double values in Old English. If voiced, they are equivalent to *th* (in *though*), *v*, and *z*. Otherwise, they are pronounced as *th* (in *thin*), *f* (in *fin*), and *s* (in *sin*). The syllabic environment will usually compel the student to give these letters their proper values. When occurring between vowels, they are always voiced: **ðoðer**, *other*; **ofer**, *over*; **rīsan**, *to rise*.

NOTE.—The general rule in Old English, as in Modern English, is, that voiced consonants have a special affinity for other voiced consonants, and voiceless for voiceless. This is the law of Assimilation. Thus when *de* is added to form the preterit of a verb whose stem

¹ A little practice will enable the student to see the appropriateness of calling these consonants voiced and voiceless. Try to pronounce a voiced consonant,—*d* in *den*, for example, but without the assistance of *en*,—and there will be heard a gurgle, or *vocal* murmur. But in *t*, of *ten*, there is no sound at all, but only a feeling of tension in the organs.

ends in a voiceless consonant, the **d** is unvoiced, or assimilated, to **t**: **seſtan**, to *set*, **seſte** (but **treððan**, to *tread*, has **treððe**); **slæpan**, to *sleep*, **slæpte**; **drencan**, to *drench*, **drencſte**; **cyſſan**, to *kiss*, **cyste**. See § 126, Note 1.

Syllables.

10. A syllable is usually a vowel, either alone or in combination with consonants, uttered with a single impulse of stress; but certain consonants may form syllables: *oven* (= *ov-n*), *battle* (= *bæt-l*); (cf. also the vulgar pronunciation of *elm*).

A syllable may be (1) weak or strong, (2) open or closed, (3) long or short.

(1) A weak syllable receives a light stress. Its vowel sound is often different from that of the corresponding strong, or stressed, syllable. Cf. weak and strong *my* in "I want my *lárge* hat" and "I want *mý* hat."

(2) An open syllable ends in a vowel or diphthong: **ðē-man**, to *deem*; **ðū**, *thou*; **sca-can**, to *shake*; **dæ-geſ**, by *day*. A closed syllable ends in one or more consonants: **ðing**, *thing*; **gōð**, *good*; **glæð**, *glad*.

(3) A syllable is long (*a*) if it contains a long vowel or a long diphthong: **drī-fan**, to *drive*; **lū-can**, to *lock*; **slæ-pan**, to *sleep*; **cēo-san**, to *choose*; (*b*) if its vowel or diphthong is followed by more than one consonant:¹ **cræft**, *strength*; **heard**, *hard*; **lib-ban**, to *live*; **feal-lan**,

¹ Taken separately, every syllable ending in a single consonant is long. It may be said, therefore, that all closed syllables are long; but in the natural flow of language, the single final consonant of a syllable so often blends with a following initial vowel, the syllable thus becoming open and short, that such syllables are not recognized as prevaillingly long. Cf. Modern English *at all* (= *a-tall*).

to *fall*. Otherwise, the syllable is short: *ðe*, *which*; *be-ran*, *to bear*; *ðæt*, *that*; *gie-fan*, *to give*.

NOTE 1. — A single consonant belongs to the following syllable: *hā-lig*, *holy* (not *hāl-ig*); *wri-tan*, *to write*; *fæ-der*, *father*.

NOTE 2. — The student will notice that the syllable may be long and the vowel short; but the vowel cannot be long and the syllable short.

NOTE 3. — Old English short vowels, occurring in open syllables, have regularly become long in Modern English: *we-fan*, *to weave*; *e-tan*, *to eat*; *ma-cian*, *to make*; *na-cod*, *naked*; *a-can*, *to ache*; *o-fer*, *over*. And Old English long vowels, preceding two or more consonants, have generally been shortened: *brēost*, *breast*; *hælið*, *health*; *slæpte*, *slept*; *lædde*, *led*.

Accentuation.

11. The accent in Old English falls usually on the radical syllable, never on the inflectional ending: *bringan*, *to bring*; *stānas*, *stones*; *bérende*, *bearing*; *idelnes*, *idleness*; *frēondscipe*, *friendship*.

But in the case of compound nouns, adjectives, and adverbs the first member of the compound (unless it be *ge-* or *be-*) receives the stronger stress: *héofon-rīce*, *heaven-kingdom*; *ǫnd-giet*, *intelligence*; *sōð-fæst*, *truthful*; *gód-cund*, *divine*; *éall-unga*, *entirely*; *blifðe-lice*, *blithely*. But *be-hāt*, *promise*; *ge-béd*, *prayer*; *ge-féalic*, *joyous*; *be-sōne*, *immediately*.

Compound verbs, however, have the stress on the radical syllable: *for-giefan*, *to forgive*; *of-linnan*, *to cease*; *ā-cnāwan*, *to know*; *wið-stǫndan*, *to withstand*; *on-sācan*, *to resist*.

NOTE. — The tendency of nouns to take the stress on the prefix, while verbs retain it on the root, is exemplified in many Modern English words: *préference*, *prefér*; *cóntact* (noun), *contráct* (verb); *ábstinence*, *abstáin*; *pérfume* (noun), *perfúme* (verb).

CHAPTER III.

INFLECTIONS.

Cases.

12. There are five cases in Old English: the nominative, the genitive, the dative, the accusative, and the instrumental.¹ Each of them, except the nominative, may be governed by prepositions. When used without prepositions, they have, in general, the following functions:

(a) The nominative, as in Modern English, is the case of the subject of a finite verb.

(b) The genitive (the possessive case of Modern English) is the case of the possessor or source. It may be called the *of* case.

(c) The dative is the case of the indirect object. It may be called the *to* or *for* case.

(d) The accusative (the objective case of Modern English) is the case of the direct object.

(e) The instrumental, which rarely differs from the dative in form, is the case of the means or the method. It may be called the *with* or *by* case.

The following paradigm of *mūð*, *the mouth*, illustrates the several cases (the article being, for the present, gratuitously added in the Modern English equivalents):

¹ Most grammars add a sixth case, the vocative. But it seems best to consider the vocative as only a *function* of the nominative *form*.

Singular.	Plural.
N. mūð = <i>the mouth</i> .	mūð-as = <i>the mouths</i> .
G. mūð-es ¹ = <i>of the mouth</i> (= <i>the mouth's</i>).	mūð-a = <i>of the mouths</i> . (= <i>the mouths'</i>).
D. mūð-e = <i>to or for the mouth</i> .	mūð-um = <i>to or for the mouths</i> .
A. mūð = <i>the mouth</i> .	mūð-as = <i>the mouths</i> .
I. mūðe = <i>with or by means of</i> <i>the mouth</i> .	mūð-um = <i>with or by means of</i> <i>the mouths</i> .

Gender.

13. The gender of Old English nouns, unlike that of Modern English, depends partly on meaning and partly on form, or ending. Thus **mūð**, *mouth*, is masculine; **tunge**, *tongue*, feminine; **ēage**, *eye*, neuter.

No very comprehensive rules, therefore, can be given; but the gender of every noun should be learned with its meaning. Gender will be indicated in the vocabularies by the different gender forms of the definite article, **sē** for the masculine, **sēo** for the feminine, and **ðæt** for the neuter: **sē mūð**, **sēo tunge**, **ðæt ēage** = *the mouth, the tongue, the eye*.

All nouns ending in **-dōm**, **-hād**, **-scipe**, or **-ere** are masculine (*cf.* Modern English *wisdom*, *childhood*, *friendship*, *worker*). Masculine, also, are nouns ending in **-a**.

Those ending in **-nes** or **-ung** are feminine (*cf.* Mod-

¹ Of course our "apostrophe and s" (= 's) comes from the Old English genitive ending **-es**. The *e* is preserved in *Wednesday* (= Old English **Wōdnes dæg**). But at a very early period it was thought that *John's book*, for example, was a shortened form of *John his book*. Thus Addison (*Spectator*, No. 135) declares 's a survival of *his*. How, then, would he explain the *s* of *his*? And how would he dispose of *Mary's book*?

ern English goodness, and gerundial forms in *-ing*: see-*ing* is believing).

Thus *sē wīsdōm*, *wisdom*; *sē cildhād*, *childhood*; *sē frēondscipe*, *friendship*; *sē fiscere*, *fisher(man)*; *sē hunta*, *hunter*; *sēo gelīcnes*, *likeness*; *sēo leornung*, *learning*.

Declensions.

14. There are two great systems of declension in Old English, the Vowel Declension and the Consonant Declension. A noun is said to belong to the Vowel Declension when the final letter of its stem is a vowel, this vowel being then known as the *stem-characteristic*; but if the stem-characteristic is a consonant, the noun belongs to the Consonant Declension. There might have been, therefore, as many subdivisions of the Vowel Declension in Old English as there were vowels, and as many subdivisions of the Consonant Declension as there were consonants. All Old English nouns, however, belonging to the Vowel Declension, ended their stems originally in *a*, *ō*, *i*, or *u*. Hence there are but four subdivisions of the Vowel Declension: *a*-stems, *ō*-stems, *i*-stems, and *u*-stems.

The Vowel Declension is commonly called the Strong Declension, and its nouns Strong Nouns.

NOTE. — The terms Strong and Weak were first used by Jacob Grimm (1785–1863) in the terminology of verbs, and thence transferred to nouns and adjectives. By a Strong Verb, Grimm meant one that could form its preterit out of its own resources; that is, without calling in the aid of an additional syllable: Modern English *run*, *ran*; *find*, *found*; but verbs of the Weak Conjugation had to borrow, as it were, an inflectional syllable: *gain*, *gained*; *help*, *helped*.

15. The stems of nouns belonging to the Consonant Declension ended, with but few exceptions, in the letter **n** (*cf.* Latin *homin-em*, *ration-em*, Greek *ποιμέν-α*). They are called, therefore, **n-stems**, the Declension itself being known as the **n-Declension**, or the **Weak Declension**. The nouns, also, are called **Weak Nouns**.

16. If every Old English noun had preserved the original Germanic stem-characteristic (or final letter of the stem), there would be no difficulty in deciding at once whether any given noun is an **a-stem**, **ō-stem**, **i-stem**, **u-stem**, or **n-stem**; but these final letters had, for the most part, either been dropped, or fused with the case-endings, long before the period of historic Old English. It is only, therefore, by a rigid comparison of the Germanic languages with one another, and with the other Aryan languages, that scholars are able to reconstruct a single Germanic language, in which the original stem-characteristics may be seen far better than in any one historic branch of the Germanic group (§ 5, Note).

This hypothetical language, which bears the same ancestral relation to the historic Germanic dialects that Latin bears to the Romance tongues, is known simply as *Germanic* (Gmc.), or as *Primitive Germanic*. Ability to reconstruct Germanic forms is not expected of the students of this book, but the following table should be examined as illustrating the basis of distinction among the several Old English declensions (O.E. = Old English, Mn.E. = Modern English):

I. Strong or Vowel Declensions	{	(1) a-stems	{	Gmc. <i>staina-z</i> , O.E. stān , Mn.E. <i>stone</i> .		
		(2) ō-stems	{	Gmc. <i>hallō</i> , O.E. heall , Mn.E. <i>hall</i> .		
		(3) i-stems	{	Gmc. <i>bōni-z</i> , O.E. bēn , Mn.E. <i>boon</i> .		
		(4) u-stems	{	Gmc. <i>sunu-z</i> , O.E. sunu , Mn.E. <i>son</i> .		
II. Consonant Declensions	{	(1) n-stems	(Weak Declension)	{	Gmc. <i>tungōn-iz</i> , O.E. tung-an , Mn.E. <i>tongue-s</i> .	
		(2) Remnants of other Consonant Declensions	(a)	{	Gmc. <i>fōt-iz</i> , O.E. fēt , Mn.E. <i>feet</i> .	
				(b)	{	Gmc. <i>frijōnd-iz</i> , O.E. friēnd , Mn.E. <i>friend-s</i> .
					(c)	{

NOTE. — “It will be seen that if Old English **ēage**, *eye*, is said to be an n-stem, what is meant is this, that at some former period the kernel of the word ended in -n, while, as far as the Old English language proper is concerned, all that is implied is that the word is inflected in a certain manner.” (Jespersen, *Progress in Language*, § 109).

This is true of all Old English stems, whether Vowel or Consonant. The division, therefore, into a-stems, ǫ-stems, etc., is made in the interests of grammar as well as of philology.

Conjugations.

17. There are, likewise, two systems of conjugation in Old English: the Strong or Old Conjugation, and the Weak or New Conjugation.

The verbs of the Strong Conjugation (the so-called Irregular Verbs of Modern English) number about three hundred, of which not one hundred remain in Modern English (§ 101, Note). They form their preterit and frequently their past participle by changing the radical vowel of the present stem. This vowel change or modification is called *ablaut* (pronounced *áhp-lowt*): Modern English *sing, sang, sung*; *rise, rose, risen*. As the radical vowel of the preterit plural is often different from that of the preterit singular, there are four *principal parts* or *tense stems* in an Old English strong verb, instead of the three of Modern English. The four principal parts in the conjugation of a strong verb are (1) the present indicative, (2) the preterit indicative singular, (3) the preterit indicative plural, and (4) the past participle.

Strong verbs fall into seven groups, illustrated in the following table:

PRESENT.	PRET. SING.	PRET. PLUR.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
<p>I.</p> <p>Bītan, <i>to bite</i> :</p> <p>Ic bīt-e, <i>I bite</i> or <i>shall bite</i>.¹</p>	<p>Ic bāt, <i>I bit</i>.</p>	<p>Wē bit-on, <i>we bit</i>.</p>	<p>Ic hæbbe ge²-bit-en, <i>I have bitten</i>.</p>
<p>II.</p> <p>Bēoðan, <i>to bid</i> :</p> <p>Ic bēoð-e, <i>I bid</i> or <i>shall bid</i>.</p>	<p>Ic bēad, <i>I bade</i>.</p>	<p>Wē bud-on, <i>we bade</i>.</p>	<p>Ic hæbbe ge-bod-en, <i>I have bidden</i>.</p>

¹ Early West Saxon had no distinctive form for the future. The present was used both as present proper and as future. Cf. Modern English "I go home tomorrow," or "I am going home tomorrow" for "I shall go home tomorrow."

² The prefix **ge-** (Middle English *y-*), cognate with Latin *co* (*con*) and implying completeness of action, was not always used. It never

PRESENT.	PRET. SING.	PRET. PLUR.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
<p>III.</p> <p>Bindan, to bind :</p> <p>Ic bind-e, I bind or shall bind.</p>	<p>Ic bōnd, I bound.</p>	<p>Wē bund-on, we bound.</p>	<p>Ic hæbbe ge-bund-en, I have bound.</p>
<p>IV.</p> <p>Beran, to bear :</p> <p>Ic ber-e, I bear or shall bear.</p>	<p>Ic bær, I bore.</p>	<p>Wē bær-on, we bore.</p>	<p>Ic hæbbe ge-bor-en, I have borne.</p>
<p>V.</p> <p>Metan, to measure :</p> <p>Ic met-e, I measure or shall measure.</p>	<p>Ic mæt, I measured.</p>	<p>Wē mæt-on, we measured.</p>	<p>Ic hæbbe ge-met-en, I have measured.</p>
<p>VI.</p> <p>Faran, to go :</p> <p>Ic far-e, I go or shall go.</p>	<p>Ic fōr, I went.</p>	<p>Wē fōr-on, we went.</p>	<p>Ic eom¹ ge-far-en, I have (am) gone.</p>
<p>VII.</p> <p>Feallan, to fall :</p> <p>Ic feall-e, I fall or shall fall.</p>	<p>Ic fēoll, I fell.</p>	<p>Wē fēoll-on, we fell.</p>	<p>Ic eom¹ ge-feall-en, I have (am) fallen.</p>

18. The verbs of the Weak Conjugation (the so-called Regular Verbs of Modern English) form their preterit

occurs in the past participles of compound verbs: **op-feallan**, to fall off, past participle **op-feallen** (not **op-gefeallen**). Milton errs in prefixing it to a present participle:

“What needs my Shakespeare, for his honour'd bones,
The labour of an age in piled stones?
Or that his hallow'd reliques should be hid
Under a star-ypointing pyramid.”

— *Epitaph on William Shakespeare.*

And Shakespeare misuses it in “Y-ravished,” a preterit (*Pericles* III, *Prologue* l. 35).

It survives in the archaic *y-clept* (Old English **ge-clypod**, called). It appears as *a* in *aware* (Old English **ge-wær**), as *e* in *enough* (Old English **ge-nōh**), and as *i* in *handiwork* (Old English **hand-ge-weorc**).

¹ With intransitive verbs denoting *change of condition*, the Old English auxiliary is usually some form of *to be* rather than *to have*. See § 139.

and past participle by adding to the present stem a suffix¹ with *d* or *t*: Modern English *love, loved; sleep, slept*.

The stem of the preterit plural is never different from the stem of the preterit singular; hence these verbs have only three distinctive tense-stems, or principal parts: viz., (1) the present indicative, (2) the preterit indicative, and (3) the past participle.

Weak verbs fall into three groups, illustrated in the following table:

PRESENT.	PRETERIT.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
I. Fremman , to perform: Ic fremm-e , I perform or shall perform.	 Ic frem-ede , I performed.	 Ic hæbbe ge-frem-ed , I have performed.
II. Bodian , to proclaim: Ic bodi-e , I proclaim or shall proclaim.	 Ic bod-ode , I proclaimed.	 Ic hæbbe ge-bod-od , I have proclaimed.
III. Habban , to have: Ic hæbbe , I have or shall have.	 Ic hæf-de , I had.	 Ic hæbbe ge-hæf-d , I have had.

19. There remain a few verbs (chiefly the Auxiliary Verbs of Modern English) that do not belong entirely to either of the two conjugations mentioned. The most important of them are, **Ic mæg** I may, **Ic mihte** I might; **Ic cōn** I can, **Ic cūðe** I could; **Ic mōt** I must, **Ic mōste** I

¹ The theory that *loved*, for example, is a fused form of *love-did* has been generally given up. The dental ending was doubtless an Indo-Germanic suffix, which became completely specialized only in the Teutonic languages.

must; *Ic sceal I shall*, *Ic sceolde I should*, *Ic eom I am*,
Ic wæs I was; *Ic wille I will*, *Ic wolde I would*; *Ic dō*
I do, *Ic dyde I did*; *Ic gā I go*, *Ic ēode I went*.

All but the last four of these are known as Preterit-Present Verbs. The present tense of each of them is *in origin* a preterit, *in function* a present. Cf. Modern English *ought* (= *owed*).



CHAPTER IV.

ORDER OF WORDS.

20. The order of words in Old English is more like that of Modern German than of Modern English. Yet it is only the Transposed order that the student will feel to be at all un-English; and the Transposed order, even before the period of the Norman Conquest, was fast yielding place to the Normal order.

The three divisions of order are (1) Normal, (2) Inverted, and (3) Transposed.

(1) Normal order = subject + predicate. In Old English, the Normal order is found chiefly in independent clauses. The predicate is followed by its modifiers: *Sē hwæl bið micle læssa þonne ððre hwalas*, *That whale is much smaller than other whales*; *Qnd hē geseah twā scipu*, *And he saw two ships*.

(2) Inverted order = predicate + subject. This order occurs also in independent clauses, and is employed (a) when some modifier of the predicate precedes the predicate, the subject being thrown behind. The

words most frequently causing Inversion in Old English prose are *pā then*, *þonne then*, and *pær there*: *Ðā fōr hē, Then went he*; *Ðonne ærnað h̄y ealle tōweard pām fēo, Then gallop they all toward the property*; *ac pær bið medo genōh, but there is mead enough*.

Inversion is employed (b) in interrogative sentences: *Lufast ðū mē? Lovest thou me?* and (c) in imperative sentences: *Cume ðin rīce, Thy kingdom come*.

(3) Transposed order=subject . . . predicate. That is, the predicate comes last in the sentence, being preceded by its modifiers. This is the order observed in dependent clauses:¹ *Ðonne cymeð sē man sē pæt swiftoste hors hafað, Then comes the man that has the swiftest horse* (literally, *that the swiftest horse has*); *Ne mētte hē ær nān gebūn land, sibban hē frōm his āgnum hām fōr, Nor did he before find any cultivated land, after he went from his own home* (literally, *after he from his own home went*).

21. Two other peculiarities in the order of words require a brief notice.

(1) Pronominal datives and accusatives usually precede the predicate: *Hē hine oferwann, He overcame him* (literally, *He him overcame*); *Dryhten him andwyrde, The Lord answered him*. But substantival datives and accusatives, as in Modern English, follow the predicate.

¹ But in the *Voyages of Ohthere and Wulfstan*, in which the style is apparently more that of oral than of written discourse, the Normal is more frequent than the Transposed order in dependent clauses. In his other writings Alfred manifests a partiality for the Transposed order in dependent clauses, except in the case of substantival clauses introduced by *pæt*. Such clauses show a marked tendency to revert to their Normal *oratio recta* order. The norm thus set by the indirect affirmative clause seems to have proved an important factor in the

The following sentence illustrates both orders: **H̃y genāmon Ioseph, qnd hine gesealdon cīpemqnum, qnd h̃y hine gesealdon in Ēgypta lqnd**, *They took Joseph, and sold him to merchants, and they sold him into Egypt* (literally, *They took Joseph, and him sold to merchants, and they him sold into Egyptians' land*).

NOTE.—The same order prevails in the case of pronominal nominatives used as predicate nouns: **Ic hit eom**, *It is I* (literally, *I it am*); **Ðū hit eart**, *It is thou* (literally, *Thou it art*).

(2) The attributive genitive, whatever relationship it expresses, usually precedes the noun which it qualifies: **Breoton is gārsecges īgland**, *Britain is an island of the ocean* (literally, *ocean's island*); **Swilce hit is ēac berende on wēcgā ōrum**, *Likewise it is also rich in ores of metals* (literally, *metals' ores*); **Cyninga cyning**, *King of kings* (literally, *Kings' king*); **Gē witon Godes rīces ger̃yne**, *Ye know the mystery of the kingdom of God* (literally, *Ye know God's kingdom's mystery*).

A preposition governing the word modified by the genitive, precedes the genitive:¹ **On ealdra manna sǣgenum**, *In old men's sayings*; **Æt ðǣra strǣta eñdum**, *At the ends of the streets* (literally, *At the streets' ends*); **For ealra ðīnra hālgena lufan**, *For all thy saints' love*. See, also, § 94, (5).

ultimate disappearance of Transposition from dependent clauses. The influence of Norman French helped only to consummate forces that were already busily at work.

¹ The positions of the genitive are various. It frequently follows its noun: **pā bearn pāra Aðeniensa**, *The children of the Athenians*. It may separate an adjective and a noun: **Ān l̃ytel s̃ǣs earm**, *A little arm of (the) sea*. The genitive may here be construed as an adjective, or part of a compound = *A little sea-arm*; **Mīd m̃onegum Godes gifum**, *With many God-gifts* = *many divine gifts*.

CHAPTER V.

PRACTICAL SUGGESTIONS.

22. In the study of Old English, the student must remember that he is dealing not with a foreign or isolated language but with the earlier forms of his own mother tongue. The study will prove profitable and stimulating in proportion as close and constant comparison is made of the old with the new. The guiding principles in such a comparison are reducible chiefly to two. These are (1) the regular operation of phonetic laws, resulting especially in certain Vowel Shiftings, and (2) the alterations in form and syntax that are produced by Analogy.

(1) "The former of these is of physiological or *natural* origin, and is perfectly and inflexibly regular throughout the same period of the same language; and even though different languages show different phonetic habits and predilections, there is a strong general resemblance between the changes induced in one language and in another; many of the particular laws are true for many languages.

(2) "The other principle is psychical, or mental, or *artificial*, introducing various more or less capricious changes that are supposed to be emendations; and its operation is, to some extent, uncertain and fitful."¹

¹ Skeat, *Principles of English Etymology*, Second Series, § 342. But Jespersen, with Collitz and others, stoutly contests "the theory of sound laws and analogy sufficing between them to explain everything in linguistic development."

(1) Vowel-Shiftings.

23. It will prove an aid to the student in acquiring the inflections and vocabulary of Old English to note carefully the following shiftings that have taken place in the gradual growth of the Old English vowel system into that of Modern English.

(1) As stated in § 3, the Old English inflectional vowels, which were all short and unaccented, weakened in early Middle English to *e*. This *e* in Modern English is frequently dropped :

OLD ENGLISH.	MIDDLE ENGLISH.	MODERN ENGLISH.
stān-as	ston-es	stones
sun-u	sun-e	son
sun-a	sun-e	sons
ox-an	ox-en	oxen
swift-ra	swift-er	swifter
swift-ost	swift-est	swiftest
lōc-ode	lok-edē	looked

(2) The Old English long vowels have shifted their phonetic values with such uniform regularity that it is possible in almost every case to infer the Modern English sound ; but our spelling is so chaotic that while the student may infer the modern sound, he cannot always infer the modern symbol representing the sound.

OLD ENGLISH. MODERN ENGLISH.

ā

o (as in *no*)¹

{ nā = *no* ; stān = *stone* ; bān =
bone ; rād = *road* ; āc = *oak* ;
hāl = *whole* ; hām = *home* ;
sāwan = *to sow* ; gāst =
ghost.

¹ But Old English ā preceded by *w* sometimes gives Modern English *o* as in *two* : twā = *two* ; hwā = *who* ; hwām = *whom*.

OLD ENGLISH.	MODERN ENGLISH.	
ĕ	<i>e</i> (as in <i>he</i>)	{ hĕ = <i>he</i> ; wĕ = <i>we</i> ; ðĕ = <i>thee</i> ; mĕ = <i>me</i> ; gĕ = <i>ye</i> ; hĕl = <i>heel</i> ; wĕrig = <i>weary</i> ; gelĕfan = <i>to</i> <i>believe</i> ; gĕas = <i>geese</i> .
ī (ȳ)	<i>i (y)</i> (as in <i>mine</i>)	{ mīn = <i>mine</i> ; ðīn = <i>thine</i> ; wīr = <i>wire</i> ; mȳs = <i>mice</i> ; rīm = <i>rime</i> (wrongly spelt <i>rhyme</i>); lȳs = <i>lice</i> ; bī = <i>by</i> ; scīnan = <i>to shine</i> ; stig-rāp = <i>sty-rope</i> (shortened to <i>stirrup</i> , stīgan meaning <i>to mount</i>).
ō	<i>o</i> (as in <i>do</i>)	{ dō = <i>I do</i> ; tō = <i>too, to</i> ; gōs = <i>goose</i> ; tōð = <i>tooth</i> ; mōna = <i>moon</i> ; dōm = <i>doom</i> ; mōd = <i>mood</i> ; wōgian = <i>to woo</i> ; slōh = <i>I slew</i> .
ū	<i>ou (ow)</i> (as in <i>thou</i>)	{ ðū = <i>thou</i> ; fūl = <i>foul</i> ; hūs = <i>house</i> ; nū = <i>now</i> ; hū = <i>how</i> ; tūn = <i>town</i> ; ūre = <i>our</i> ; ūt = <i>out</i> ; hlūd = <i>loud</i> ; ðūs = <i>send</i> = <i>thousand</i> .
ǣ, ēa, ēo	<i>ea</i> (as in <i>sea</i>)	{ ǣ : sǣ = <i>sea</i> ; mǣl = <i>meal</i> ; dǣlan = <i>to deal</i> ; clǣne = <i>clean</i> ; grǣdig = <i>greedy</i> . ēa : ēare = <i>ear</i> ; ēast = <i>east</i> ; drēam = <i>dream</i> ; gēar = <i>year</i> ; bēatan = <i>to beat</i> . ēo : ðrēo = <i>three</i> ; drēorig = <i>dreary</i> ; sēo = <i>she</i> ; hrēod = <i>reed</i> ; dēop = <i>deep</i> .

(2) Analogy.

24. But more important than vowel shifting is the great law of Analogy, for Analogy shapes not only words but constructions. It belongs, therefore, to

Etymology and to Syntax, since it influences both form and function. By this law, minorities tend to pass over to the side of the majorities. "The greater mass of cases exerts an assimilative influence upon the smaller."¹ The effect of Analogy is to simplify and to regularize. "The main factor in getting rid of irregularities is group-influence, or Analogy — the influence exercised by the members of an association-group on one another. . . . Irregularity consists in partial isolation from an association-group through some formal difference."²

Under the influence of Analogy, entire declensions and conjugations have been swept away, leaving in Modern English not a trace of their former existence. There are in Old English, for example, five plural endings for nouns, **-as**, **-a**, **-e**, **-u**, and **-an**. No one could well have predicted³ that **-as** (Middle English **-es**) would soon take the lead, and become the norm to which the other endings would eventually conform, for there were more **an**-plurals than **as**-plurals; but the **as**-plurals were doubtless more often employed in everyday speech. *Oxen* (Old English **oxan**) is the sole pure survival of the hundreds of Old English **an**-plurals.

¹ Whitney, *Life and Growth of Language*, Chap. IV.

² Sweet, *A New English Grammar*, Part I., § 535.

³ As Skeat says (§ 22, (2)), Analogy is "fitful." It enables us to explain many linguistic phenomena, but not to anticipate them. The multiplication of books tends to check its influence by perpetuating the forms already in use. Thus Chaucer employed nine *en*-plurals, and his influence served for a time to check the further encroachment of the *es*-plurals. As soon as there is an acknowledged standard in any language, the operation of Analogy is fettered.

No group of feminine nouns in Old English had *-es* as the genitive singular ending; but by the close of the Middle English period all feminines formed their genitive singular in *-es* (or *-s*, Modern English 's) after the analogy of the Old English masculine and neuter nouns with *es*-genitives. The weak preterits, in *-ode* have all been leveled under the *ed*-forms, and of the three hundred strong verbs in Old English more than two hundred have become weak.

These are not cases of derivation (as are the shifted vowels): Modern English *-s* in *sons*, for example, could not possibly be derived from Old English *-a* in *suna*, or Middle English *-e* in *sune* (§ 23, (1)). They are cases of replacement by Analogy.

A few minor examples will quicken the student's appreciation of the nature of the influence exercised by Analogy:

(a) The intrusive *l* in *could* (Chaucer always wrote *coud* or *coude*) is due to association with *would* and *should*, in each of which *l* belongs by etymological right.

(b) *He need not* (for *He needs not*) is due to the assimilative influence of the auxiliaries *may*, *can*, etc., which have never added *-s* for their third person singular (§ 137).

(c) *I am friends with him*, in which *friends* is a crystalized form for *on good terms*, may be traced to the influence of such expressions as *He and I are friends*, *They are friends*, etc.

(d) Such errors as are seen in *runned*, *seed*, *gooses*, *badder*, *hissself*, *says I* (usually coupled with *says he*)

are all analogical formations. Though not sanctioned by good usage, it is hardly right to call these forms the products of "false analogy." The grammar involved is false, because unsupported by literary usages and traditions; but the analogy on which these forms are built is no more false than the law of gravitation is false when it makes a dress sit unconventionally.

PART II.

ETYMOLOGY AND SYNTAX.

THE STRONG OR VOWEL DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS. THE **a**-DECLENSION.

CHAPTER VI.

(*a*) Masculine *α*-Stems.

[O.E., M.E., and Mn.E. will henceforth be used for Old English, Middle English, and Modern English. Other abbreviations employed are self-explaining.]

25. The **a**-Declension, corresponding to the Second or *o*-Declension of Latin and Greek, contains only (*a*) masculine and (*b*) neuter nouns. To this declension belong most of the O.E. masculine and neuter nouns. At a very early period, many of the nouns belonging properly to the *i*- and *u*-Declensions began to pass over to the **a**-Declension. This declension may therefore be considered the *normal declension* for all masculine and neuter nouns belonging to the Strong Declension. }

26. Paradigms of *sē mūð*, *mouth*; *sē fiscere*, *fisherman*; *sē hwæl*, *whale*; *sē mearh*, *horse*; *sē finger*, *finger*:

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	mūð	fiscer-e	hwæl	mearb	finger
<i>G.</i>	mūð-es	fiscer-es	hwæl-es	mēar-es	fingr-es
<i>D.I.</i>	mūð-e	fiscer-e	hwæl-e	mēar-e	fingr-e
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	mūð-as	fiscer-as	hwal-as	mēar-as	fingr-as
<i>G.</i>	mūð-a	fiscer-a	hwal-a	mēar-a	fingr-a
<i>D.I.</i>	mūð-um	fiscer-um	hwal-um	mēar-um	fingr-um

NOTE. — For meanings of the cases, see § 12. The dative and instrumental are alike in all nouns.

27. The student will observe (1) that nouns whose nominative ends in *-e* (*fiscere*) drop this letter before adding the case endings; (2) that *æ* before a consonant (*hwæl*) changes to *a* in the plural;¹ (3) that *h*, preceded by *r* (*mearh*) or *l* (*seolh*, *seal*), is dropped before an inflectional vowel, the stem vowel being then lengthened by way of compensation; (4) that dissyllables (*finger*) having the first syllable long, generally syncopate the vowel of the second syllable before adding the case endings.²

28. Paradigm of the Definite Article³ *sē*, *sēo*, *ðæt* = *the*:

¹ Adjectives usually retain *æ* in closed syllables, changing it to *a* in open syllables: *hwæt* (*active*), *glæd* (*glad*), *wær* (*wary*) have *G. hwates*, *glades*, *wares*; *D. hwatum*, *gladum*, *warum*; but *A. hwætne*, *glædne*, *wærne*. Nouns, however, change to *a* only in open syllables followed by a guttural vowel, *a* or *u*. The *æ* in the open syllables of the singular is doubtless due to the analogy of the *N.A.* singular, both being closed syllables.

² Cf. *Mn.E. drizz'ling*, *rememb'ring*, *abysmal* (*abysm* = *abiz'm*), *sick'ning*, in which the principle of syncopation is precisely the same.

³ This may mean four things: (1) *The*, (2) *That* (demonstrative), (3) *He*, *she*, *it*, (4) *Who*, *which*, *that* (relative pronoun). *Mn.E.* demonstrative *that* is, of course, the survival of *O.E.* neuter *ðæt* in its demonstrative sense. Professor Victor Henry (*Comparative Grammar of English and German*, § 160, 3) sees a survival of dative plural demonstrative *ðæm* in such an expression as *in them days*. It seems more probable, however, that *them* so used has followed the lead of

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
<i>Sing. N.</i>	sē (se)	sēo	ðæt
<i>G.</i>	ðæs	ðære	ðæs
<i>D.</i>	ðæm (ðām)	ðære	ðæm (ðām)
<i>A.</i>	ðone	ðā	ðæt
<i>I.</i>	ðy, ðon	—	ðy, ðon

All Genders.

<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	ðā
<i>G.</i>	ðāra
<i>D.</i>	ðæm (ðām)

29.

VOCABULARY.¹

sē bōcere, scribe [bōc].

sē cyning, king.

sē dæg, day.

sē ende, end.

sē engel, angel [angelus].

sē frēodōm, freedom.

sē fugol (G. sometimes fugles),
bird [fowl].

sē gār, spear [gore, gar-fish].

sē heofon, heaven.

sē hierde, herdsman [shep-herd].

ond (and), and.

sē secg, man, warrior.

sē seolh, seal.

sē stān, stone.

sē wealh, foreigner, Welshman
[wal-nut].

sē weall, wall.

sē wiſdōm, wisdom.

sē wulf, wolf.

30.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ðāra wulfa mūðas. 2. Ðæs fisceres fingras. 3. Ðāra
Wēala cyninge. 4. Ðæm englum ond ðæm hierdum. 5. Ðāra

this and these, that and those, in their double function of pronoun and adjective. There was doubtless some such evolution as, I saw them. Them what? Them boys.

An unquestioned survival of the dative singular feminine of the article is seen in the *-ter* of *Atterbury* (= æt ðære byrig, at the town); and ðæm survives in the *-ten* of *Attenborough*, the word *borough* having become an uninflected neuter. Skeat, *Principles*, First Series, § 185.

¹ The brackets contain etymological hints that may help the student to discern relationships otherwise overlooked. The genitive is given only when not perfectly regular.

daga ende. 6. Ðæm bōcerum ƿnd ðæm seƿgum ðæs cyninges.
 7. Ðæm sēole ƿnd ðæm fuglum. 8. Ðā stānas ƿnd ðā gāras.
 9. Hwala ƿnd mēara. 10. Ðāra ƿngla wīsdōm. 11. Ðæs
 cyninges bōceres frēodōm. 12. Ðāra hierda fuglum. 13. Ðȳ
 stāne. 14. Ðæm wealle.

II. 1. For the horses and the seals. 2. For the Welsh-
 men's freedom. 3. Of the king's birds. 4. By the wis-
 dom of men and angels. 5. With the spear and the stone.
 6. The herdsman's seal and the warriors' spears. 7. To
 the king of heaven. 8. By means of the scribe's wisdom.
 9. The whale's mouth and the foreigner's spear. 10. For
 the bird belonging to (= of) the king's scribe. 11. Of that
 finger.



CHAPTER VII.

(b) Neuter *a*-Stems.

31. The neuter nouns of the *a*-Declension differ from
 the masculines only in the N.A. plural.

32. Paradigms of *ðæt hof*, *court, dwelling*; *ðæt bearn*,
child; *ðæt bān*, *bone*; *ðæt rīce*, *kingdom*; *ðæt spere*,
spear; *ðæt werod*, *band of men*; *ðæt tungol*, *star*:

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	<i>hof</i>	<i>bearn</i>	<i>bān</i>	<i>rīc-e</i>	<i>sper-e</i>	<i>werod</i>	<i>tungol</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>hof-es</i>	<i>bearn-es</i>	<i>bān-es</i>	<i>rīc-es</i>	<i>sper-es</i>	<i>werod-es</i>	<i>tungl-es</i>
<i>D.I.</i>	<i>hof-e</i>	<i>bearn-e</i>	<i>bān-e</i>	<i>rīc-e</i>	<i>sper-e</i>	<i>werod-e</i>	<i>tungl-e</i>
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	<i>hof-u</i>	<i>bearn</i>	<i>bān</i>	<i>rīc-u</i>	<i>sper-u</i>	<i>werod</i>	<i>tungl-u</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>hof-a</i>	<i>bearn-a</i>	<i>bān-a</i>	<i>rīc-a</i>	<i>sper-a</i>	<i>werod-a</i>	<i>tungl-a</i>
<i>D.I.</i>	<i>hof-um</i>	<i>bearn-um</i>	<i>bān-um</i>	<i>rīc-um</i>	<i>sper-um</i>	<i>werod-um</i>	<i>tungl-um</i>

33. The paradigms show (1) that monosyllables with
 short stems (*hof*) take *-u* in the N.A. plural; (2) that

monosyllables with long stems (**bearn**, **bān**) do not distinguish the N.A. plural from the N.A. singular; ¹ (3) that dissyllables in -e, whether the stem be long or short (**rīce**, **spere**), have -u in the N.A. plural; (4) that dissyllables ending in a consonant and having the first syllable short² (**werod**) do not usually distinguish the N.A. plural from the N.A. singular; (5) that dissyllables ending in a consonant and having the first syllable long (**tungol**) more frequently take -u in the N.A. plural.

NOTE. — Syncopation occurs as in the masculine a-stems. See § 27, (4).

34. Present and Preterit Indicative of **habban**, *to have*:

PRESENT.

- Sing.* 1. **Ic hæbbe**, *I have*, or *shall have*.³
 2. **ðū hæfst** (**hafast**), *thou hast*, or *wilt have*.
 3. **hē, hēo, hit hæfð** (**hafað**), *he, she, it has*, or *will have*.
Plur. 1. **wē habbað**, *we have*, or *shall have*.
 2. **gē habbað**, *ye have*, or *will have*.
 3. **hīe habbað**, *they have*, or *will have*.

PRETERIT.

- Sing.* 1. **Ic hæfde**, *I had*.
 2. **ðū hæfdest**, *thou hadst*.
 3. **hē, hēo, hit hæfde**, *he, she, it had*.
Plur. 1. **wē hæfdon**, *we had*.
 2. **gē hæfdon**, *ye had*.
 3. **hīe hæfdon**, *they had*.

¹ Note the many nouns in Mn.E. that are unchanged in the plural. These are either survivals of O.E. long stems, *swine*, *sheep*, *deer*, *folk*, or analogical forms, *fish*, *trout*, *mackerel*, *salmon*, etc.

² Dissyllables whose first syllable is a prefix are, of course, excluded. They follow the declension of their last member: **gebed**, *prayer*, **gebedu**, *prayers*; **gefecht**, *battle*, **gefecht**, *battles*.

³ See § 17, Note 1. Note that (as in **hwæl**, § 27, (2)) **æ** changes to **a** when the following syllable contains **a**: **hæbbe**, but **hafast**.

NOTE. — The negative **ne**, *not*, which always precedes its verb, contracts with all the forms of **habban**. The negative loses its **e**, **habban** its **h**. **Ne + habban = nabban**; **Ic ne hæbbe = Ic næbbe**; **Ic ne hæfde = Ic næfde**, etc. The negative forms may be gotten, therefore, by simply substituting in each case **n** for **h**.

35.

VOCABULARY.

ðæt dæl, *dale*.

ðæt dēor, *animal* [deer¹].

ðæt dor, *door*.

ðæt fæt, *vessel* [vat].

ðæt fȳr, *fire*.

ðæt gēar, *year*.

ðæt geoc, *yoke*.

ðæt geset, *habitation* [settlement].

ðæt hēafod, *head*.

ðæt hūs, *house*.

ðæt līc, *body* [lich-gate].

ðæt lim, *limb*.

on (with dat.) *in*.

ðæt spor, *track*.

ðæt wāpen, *weapon*.

ðæt wīf, *wife, woman*.

ðæt wīte, *punishment*.

ðæt word, *word*.

36.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hē hafað ðæs cyninges bearn. 2. Ðā Wēalas habbað ðā speru. 3. Ðā wif habbað ðāra sęga wāpnu. 4. Ðū hæfst ðone fugol qnd ðæt hūs ðæs hierdes. 5. Hæfð² hēo ðā fatu³? 6. Hæfde hē ðæs wifes līc on ðām hofe? 7. Hē næfde ðæs wifes līc; hē hæfde ðæs dēores hēafod. 8. Hæfð sē cyning gesetu on ðām dæle? 9. Sē bōcere hæfð ðā sēolas on ðām hūse. 10. Gē habbað frēodōm.

II. 1. They have yokes and spears. 2. We have not the vessels in the house. 3. He had fire in the vessel. 4. Did the woman have (= Had the woman) the children? 5. The animal has the body of the woman's child. 6. I shall have

¹ The old meaning survives in Shakespeare's "Rats and mice and such small deer," *King Lear*, III, 4, 144.

² See § 20, (2), (b).

³ See § 27, (2).

the heads of the wolves. 7. He and she have the king's houses. 8. Have not (= **Nabbað**) the children the warrior's weapons?



CHAPTER VIII.

THE *ō*-DECLENSION.

37. The *ō*-Declension, corresponding to the First or *ā*-Declension of Latin and Greek, contains only feminine nouns. Many feminine *i*-stems and *u*-stems soon passed over to this Declension. The *ō*-Declension may, therefore, be considered the *normal declension* for all strong feminine nouns.

38. Paradigms of *sēo giefu*, *gift*; *sēo wund*, *wound*; *sēo rōð*, *cross*; *sēo leornung*, *learning*; *sēo sāwol*, *soul*:

<i>Sing. N.</i>	<i>gief-u</i>	<i>wund</i>	<i>rōð</i>	<i>leornung</i>	<i>sāwol</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>gief-e</i>	<i>wund-e</i>	<i>rōð-e</i>	<i>leornung-a (e)</i>	<i>sāwl-e</i>
<i>D.I.</i>	<i>gief-e</i>	<i>wund-e</i>	<i>rōð-e</i>	<i>leornung-a (e)</i>	<i>sāwl-e</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>gief-e</i>	<i>wund-e</i>	<i>rōð-e</i>	<i>leornung-a (e)</i>	<i>sāwl-e</i>
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	<i>gief-a</i>	<i>wund-a</i>	<i>rōð-a</i>	<i>leornung-a</i>	<i>sāwl-a</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>gief-a</i>	<i>wund-a</i>	<i>rōð-a</i>	<i>leornung-a</i>	<i>sāwl-a</i>
<i>D.I.</i>	<i>gief-um</i>	<i>wund-um</i>	<i>rōð-um</i>	<i>leornung-um</i>	<i>sāwl-um</i>

39. Note (1) that monosyllables with short stems (*giefu*) take *u* in the nominative singular; (2) that monosyllables with long stems (*wund*, *rōð*) present the unchanged stem in the nominative singular; (3) that dissyllables are declined as monosyllables, except that abstract nouns in *-ung* prefer *a* to *e* in the singular.

NOTE.—Syncopation occurs as in masculine and neuter *a*-stems. See § 27, (4).

40. Present and Preterit Indicative of **bēon** (**wesan**),
to be:

PRESENT (first form).	PRESENT (second form).	PRETERIT.
<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic eom	1. Ic bēom	1. Ic wæs
2. ðū eart	2. ðū bist	2. ðū wære
3. hē is	3. hē bið	3. hē wæs
<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē } 2. gē } sind (on), sint 3. hīe }	1. wē } 2. gē } bēoð 3. hīe }	1. wē } 2. gē } wæron 3. hīe }

NOTE 1.—The forms **bēom**, **bist**, etc. are used chiefly as future tenses in O.E. They survive to-day only in dialects and in poetry. Farmer Dobson, for example, in Tennyson's *Promise of May*, uses *be* for all persons of the present indicative, both singular and plural; and *there be* is frequent in Shakespeare for *there are*. The Northern dialect employed **aron** as well as **sindon** and **sind** for the present plural; hence Mn.E. *are*.

NOTE 2.—Fusion with **ne** gives **neom** and **nīs** for the present; **næs**, **nære**, **næron** for the preterit.

NOTE 3.—The verb *to be* is followed by the nominative case, as in Mn.E.; but when the predicate noun is plural, and the subject a neuter pronoun in the singular, the verb agrees in number with the predicate noun. The neuter singular **ðæt** is frequently employed in this construction: **Ðæt wæron eall Finnas**, *They were all Fins*; **Ðæt sind englas**, *They are angels*; **Ðæt wæron engla gāstas**, *They were angels' spirits*.

Notice, too, that O.E. writers do not say *It is I*, *It is thou*, but *I it am*, *Thou it art*: **Ic hit eom**, **ðū hit eart**. See § 21, (1), Note 1.

41.

VOCABULARY.

sēo brycg, *bridge*.

sēo costnung, *temptation*.

sēo cwalu, *death* [quail, quell].

sēo fōr, *journey* [faran].

sēo frōfor, *consolation, comfort*.

sēo geoguð, *youth*.

sēo glōf, *glove*.

sēo hālignes¹ *holiness*.

sēo heall, *hall*.

hēr, *here*.

¹ All words ending in **-nes** double the **-s** before adding the case endings.

hwā , <i>who?</i>	sēo mildheortnes , <i>mild-hearted-</i>
hwær , <i>where?</i>	<i>ness, mercy.</i>
sēo lufu , <i>love.</i>	sēo stōw , <i>place</i> [stow away].
sēo mearc , <i>boundary</i> [mark,	ðær , <i>there.</i>
<i>marches</i> ¹].	sēo ðearf , <i>need.</i>
sēo mēd , <i>meed, reward.</i>	sēo wylf , <i>she wolf.</i>

42.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hwær is ðære bryce ende? 2. Hēr sind ðara rīca mearca. 3. Hwā hæfð þā glōfa? 4. Ðær bið ðæm cyninge frōfre ðearf. 5. Sēo wund is on ðære wylfe hēafde. 6. Wē habbað costnunga. 7. Hīe nāron on ðære healle. 8. Ic hit neom. 9. Ðæt wāron Wēalas. 10. Ðæt sind ðæs wifes bearn.

II. 1. We shall have the women's gloves. 2. Where is the place? 3. He will be in the hall. 4. Those (Ðæt) were not the boundaries of the kingdom. 5. It was not I. 6. Ye are not the king's scribes. 7. The shepherd's words are full (full + gen.) of wisdom and comfort. 8. Where are the bodies of the children? 9. The gifts are not here. 10. Who has the seals and the birds?



CHAPTER IX.

THE i-DECLENSION AND THE u-DECLENSION.

The *i*-Declension. (See § 58.)

43. The *i*-Declension, corresponding to the group of *i*-stems in the classical Third Declension, contains chiefly (*a*) masculine and (*b*) feminine nouns. The N.A. plural of these nouns ended originally in *-e* (from older *i*).

¹ As in *warden of the marches*.

(a) Masculine *i*-Stems.

44. These stems have almost completely gone over to the **a**-Declension, so that **-as** is more common than **-e** as the N.A. plural ending, whether the stem is long or short. The short stems all have **-e** in the N.A. singular.

45. Paradigms of **sē wȳrm**, *worm*; **sē wine**, *friend*.

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	wȳrm	win-e
<i>G.</i>	wȳrm-es	win-es
<i>D.I.</i>	wȳrm-e	win-e
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	wȳrm-as	win-as (e)
<i>G.</i>	wȳrm-a	win-a
<i>D.I.</i>	wȳrm-um	win-um

Names of Peoples.

46. The only *i*-stems that regularly retain **-e** of the N.A. plural are certain names of tribes or peoples used only in the plural.

47. Paradigms of **ðā ƿengle**, *Angles*; **ðā Norðymbre**, *Northumbrians*; **ðā lēode**, *people*:

<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	ƿengle	Norðymbre	lēode
<i>G.</i>	ƿengla	Norðymbra	lēoda
<i>D.I.</i>	ƿenglum	Norðymbrum	lēodum

(b) Feminine *i*-Stems.

48. The short stems (**frēm-u**) conform entirely to the declension of short **ō**-stems; long stems (**cwēn**, **wȳrt**) differ from long **ō**-stems in having no ending for the A. singular. They show, also, a preference for **-e** rather than **-a** in the N.A. plural.

49. Paradigms of **sēo frēm-u**, *benefit*; **sēo cwēn**, *woman*, *queen* [quean]; **sēo wyrt**, *root* [wort]:

<i>Sing. N.</i>	frēm-u	cwēn	wyrt
<i>G.</i>	frēm-e	cwēn-e	wyrt-e
<i>D.I.</i>	frēm-e	cwēn-e	wyrt-e
<i>A.</i>	frēm-e	cwēn	wyrt
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	frēm-a	cwēn-e (a)	wyrt-e (a)
<i>G.</i>	frēm-a	cwēn-a	wyrt-a
<i>D.I.</i>	frēm-um	cwēn-um	wyrt-um

The *u*-Declension.

50. The *u*-Declension, corresponding to the group of *u*-stems in the classical Third Declension, contains no neuters, and but few (*a*) masculines and (*b*) feminines. The short-stemmed nouns of both genders (**sun-u**, **dur-u**) retain the final *u* of the N.A. singular, while the long stems (**fēld**, **hōnd**) drop it. The influence of the masculine *a*-stems is most clearly seen in the long-stemmed masculines of the *u*-Declension (**fēld**, **fēld-es**, etc.).

NOTE.—Note the general aversion of all O.E. long stems to final *-u*: cf. N.A. plural **hof-u**, but **bearn**, **bān**; N. singular **gief-u**, but **wund**, **rōd**; N. singular **frēm-u**, but **cwēn**, **wyrt**; N.A. singular **sun-u**, **dur-u**, but **fēld**, **hōnd**.

(*a*) Masculine *u*-Stems.

51. Paradigms of **sē sun-u**, *son*; **sē fēld**, *field*:

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	sun-u	fēld
<i>G.</i>	sun-a	fēld-a (es)
<i>D.I.</i>	sun-a	fēld-a (e)
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	sun-a	fēld-a (as)
<i>G.</i>	sun-a	fēld-a
<i>D.I.</i>	sun-um	fēld-um

(b) Feminine *u*-Stems.52. Paradigms of *sēo dur-u*, *door*; *sēo hōnd*, *hand*:

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	<i>dur-u</i>	<i>hōnd</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>dur-a</i>	<i>hōnd-a</i>
<i>D.I.</i>	<i>dur-a</i>	<i>hōnd-a</i>
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	<i>dur-a</i>	<i>hōnd-a</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>dur-a</i>	<i>hōnd-a</i>
<i>D.I.</i>	<i>dur-um</i>	<i>hōnd-um</i>

53. Paradigm of the Third Personal Pronoun, *hē*, *hēo*, *hit* = *he, she, it*:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	<i>hē</i>	<i>hēo</i>	<i>hit</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>hiere</i>	<i>his</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>him</i>	<i>hiere</i>	<i>him</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>hine, hiene</i>	<i>hie</i>	<i>hit</i>
<i>All Genders.</i>			
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>		<i>hie</i>	
<i>G.</i>		<i>hiera</i>	
<i>D.</i>		<i>him</i>	

54.

VOCABULARY.

(i-STEMS.)

sē cierr, *turn, time* [*char, chare, chore*].

sēo dāēd, *deed*.

sē dāēl, *part* [*a great deal*].

ōā Dēne, *Danes*.

sē frēondscipe, *friendship*.

sēo hȳd, *skin, hide*.

ōā lōndlēode, *natives*.

ōā Mierce, *Mercians*.

ōā Rōmware, *Romans*.

ōā Seaxe, *Saxons*.

sē stēde, *place* [*in-stead of*].

(u-STEMS.)

sēo flōr, *floor*.

sēo nosu, *nose*.

sē sumor (*G. sumeres, D. sumera*), *summer*.

sē winter (*G. wintres, D. wintra*), *winter*.

sē wudu, *wood, forest*.

NOTE. — The numerous masculine nouns ending in *-hād*, — *cildhād* (*childhood*), *wifhād* (*womanhood*), — belong to the *u*-stems historically; but they have all passed over to the *a*-Declension.

55.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ðā Seaxe habbað ðæs dēores hȳd on ðām wuda.
 2. Hwā hæfð ðā giefæ? 3. Ðā Mierce hīe¹ habbað.
 4. Hwær is ðæs Wēales fugol? 5. Ðā Dene hiene habbað.
 6. Hwær sindon hiera winas? 7. Hīe sindon on ðæs cyninges wuda.
 8. Ða Rōmware ƿnd ðā Seaxe hæfdon ðā gāras ƿnd ðā geocu. 9. Hēo is on ðām hūse on wintra, ƿnd on ðām feldum on sumera. 10. Hwær is ðæs hofes duru? 11. Hēo² (= sēo duru) nis hēr.

II. 1. His friends have the bones of the seals and the bodies of the Danes. 2. Art thou the king's son? 3. Has she her³ gifts in her³ hands? 4. Here are the fields of the natives. 5. Who had the bird? 6. I had it.² 7. The child had the worm in his³ fingers. 8. The Mercians were here during (the) summer (on + dat.).



CHAPTER X.

PRESENT INDICATIVE ENDINGS OF STRONG VERBS.

56. The unchanged stem of the present indicative may always be found by dropping -an of the infinitive : feall-an, to fall; cēos-an, to choose; bīd-an, to abide.

57. The personal endings are :

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	-e	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	} -að
2.	-est	2.	
3.	-eð	3.	

¹ See § 21, (1).

² Pronouns agree in gender with the nouns for which they stand. **Hit**, however, sometimes stands for inanimate things of both masculine and feminine genders. See Wūlfing (*l.c.*) I, § 238.

³ See § 76 (last sentence).

i-Umlaut.

58. The 2d and 3d singular endings were originally not *-est* and *-eð*, but *-is* and *-ið*; and the *i* of these older endings has left its traces upon almost every page of Early West Saxon literature. This *i*, though unaccented and soon displaced, exerted a powerful back influence upon the vowel of the preceding accented syllable. This influence, a form of regressive assimilation, is known as *i-umlaut* (pronounced *oó'm-lowt*). The vowel *i* or *j* (= *y*), being itself a palatal, succeeded in palatalizing every guttural vowel that preceded it, and in imposing still more of the *i*-quality upon diphthongs that were already palatal.¹ The changes produced were these:

a	became	ę (æ)	: męnn (< *mann-iz), <i>men</i> .
ā	"	ǣ	ǣnig (< *ān-ig), <i>any</i> .
u	"	y	wyllen (< *wull-in), <i>woollen</i> .
ū	"	ȳ	mȳs (< *mūs-iz), <i>mice</i> .
o	"	ę	dęhter (< *dohtr-i), <i>to or for the daughter</i> .
ō	"	ē	fēt (< *fōt-iz), <i>feet</i> .
ea	"	ie	wiexð (< *weax-ið), <i>he grows</i> (weaxan = <i>to grow</i>).
ēa	"	īe	hiewð (< *hēaw-ið), <i>he hews</i> (hēawan = <i>to hew</i>).
eo	"	ie	wiercan (< *weorc-jan), <i>to work</i> .
ēo	"	īe	liehtan (< *lēoht-jan), <i>to light</i> .

The Unchanged Present Indicative.

59. In the Northumbrian and Mercian dialects, as well as in the dialect of Late West Saxon, the 2d and 3d singular endings were usually joined to the present

¹ The *palatal* vowels and diphthongs were long or short æ, e, i, (ie), y, ea, eo; the *guttural* vowels were long or short a, o, u.

stem without modification either of the stem itself or of the personal endings. The complete absence of unlauded forms in the present indicative of Mn.E. is thus accounted for.

In Early West Saxon, however, such forms as the following are comparatively rare in the 2d and 3d singular :

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic feall-e (<i>I fall</i>)	cēos-e (<i>I choose</i>)	bīd-e (<i>I abide</i>)
2.	ðū feall-est	cēos-est	bīd-est
3.	hē feall-eð	cēos-eð	bīd-eð
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē		
2.	gē		
3.	hīe		
	} feall-að	cēos-að	bīd-að

The Present Indicative with *i*-Umlaut and Contraction.

60. The 2d and 3d persons singular are distinguished from the other forms of the present indicative in Early West Saxon by (1) *i*-umlaut of the vowel of the stem, (2) syncope of the vowel of the ending, giving **-st** and **-ð** for **-est** and **-eð**, and (3) contraction of **-st** and **-ð** with the final consonant or consonants of the stem.

Contraction.

61. The changes produced by *i*-umlaut have been already discussed. By these changes, therefore, the stems of the 2d and 3d singular indicative of such verbs as (1) **stōndan** (= **standan**), *to stand*, (2) **cuman**, *to come*, (3) **grōwan**, *to grow*, (4) **brūcan**, *to enjoy*, (5) **blāwan**, *to blow*, (6) **feallan**, *to fall*, (7) **hēawan**, *to hew*, (8) **weorpan**, *to throw*, and (9) **cēosan**, *to choose*,

become respectively (1) *stęnd-*,¹ (2) *cym-*, (3) *grēw-*, (4) *brȳc-*, (5) *blāw-*, (6) *fiell-*, (7) *hīew-*, (8) *wierp-*, and (9) *cīes-*.

If the unchanged stem contains the vowel *e*, this is changed in the 2d and 3d singular to *i* (*ie*): *cweðan* to say, stem *cwið-*; *beran* to bear, stem *bier-*. But this mutation² had taken place long before the period of O.E., and belongs to the Germanic languages in general. It is best, however, to class the change of *e* to *i* or *ie* with the changes due to umlaut, since it occurs consistently in the 2d and 3d singular stems of Early West Saxon, and outlasted almost all of the umlaut forms proper.

If, now, the syncopated endings *-st* and *-ð* are added directly to the umlauted stem, there will frequently result such a massing of consonants as almost to defy pronunciation: *cwið-st*, *thou sayest*; *stęnd-st*, *thou standest*, etc. Some sort of contraction, therefore, is demanded for the sake of euphony. The ear and eye will, by a little practice, become a sure guide in these contractions. The following rules, however, must be observed. They apply only to the 2d and 3d singular of the present indicative:

¹ The more common form for stems with *a* is *æ* rather than *ę*: *faran*, to go, 2d and 3d singular stem *fær-*; *sacan*, to contend, stem *sæc-*. Indeed, *a* changes to *ę* via *æ* (Cosijn, *Altwestsächsische Grammatik*, I, § 32).

² Umlaut is frequently called Mutation. Metaphony is still another name for the same phenomenon. The term Metaphony has the advantage of easy adjectival formation (metaphonic). It was proposed by Professor Victor Henry (*Comparative Grammar of English and German*, Paris, 1894), but has not been naturalized.

(1) If the stem ends in a double consonant, one of the consonants is dropped :

- | | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. feall-e (<i>I fall</i>) | 1. winn-e (<i>I fight</i>) | 1. swimm-e (<i>I swim</i>) |
| 2. fiel-st | 2. win-st | 2. swim-st |
| 3. fiel-ð | 3. win-ð | 3. swim-ð |

(2) If the stem ends in -ð, this is dropped :

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. cweð-e (<i>I say</i>) | 1. weorð-e (<i>I become</i>) |
| 2. cwi-st | 2. wier-st |
| 3. cwi-ð | 3. wier-ð |

(3) If the stem ends in -a, this is changed to -t. The -ð of the ending is then also changed to -t, and usually absorbed. Thus the stem of the 2d singular serves as stem and ending for the 3d singular :

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. stōnd-e (= stand-e) (<i>I stand</i>) | 1. bind-e (<i>I bind</i>) |
| 2. stent-st | 2. bint-st |
| 3. stent | 3. bint |
| 1. bīd-e (<i>I abide</i>) | 1. rīd-e (<i>I ride</i>) |
| 2. bīt-st | 2. rīt-st |
| 3. bīt (-t) | 3. rīt (-t) |

(4) If the stem ends already in -t, the endings are added as in (3), -ð being again changed to -t and absorbed :

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. brēot-e (<i>I break</i>) | 1. feoht-e (<i>I fight</i>) | 1. bīt-e (<i>I bite</i>) |
| 2. brīet-st | 2. fieht-st | 2. bīt-st |
| 3. brīet (-t) | 3. fieht | 3. bīt (-t) |

(5) If the stem ends in -s, this is dropped before -st (to avoid -sst), but is retained before -ð, the latter being changed to -t. Thus the 2d and 3d singulars are identical :¹

¹ This happens also when the infinitive stem ends in st :

- | |
|------------------------------|
| 1. berst-e (<i>I hurt</i>) |
| 2. bier-st |
| 3. bierst. |

1. cēos-e (*I choose*)

2. cīe-st

3. cīes-t

1. rīs-e (*I rise*)

2. rī-st

3. rīs-t

62.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Sē cyning fiēð. 2. Ðā wīf cēosað ðā giefra. 3. Ðū stęntst on ðām hūse. 4. Hē wierpð ðæt wāpen. 5. Sē secg hīewð ðā lic. 6. Ðæt sǣd grēwð qnd wiexð (*Mark* iv. 27). 7. Ic stęnde hēr, qnd ðū stęntst ðær. 8. "Ic hit eom," cwið hē. 9. Hīe berað ðæs wulfes bān. 10. Hē hīe bint, qnd ic hine binde. 11. Ne rītst ðū?

II. 1. We shall bind him. 2. Who chooses the child's gifts? 3. "He was not here," says she. 4. Wilt thou remain in the hall? 5. The wolves are biting (= bite) the fishermen. 6. He enjoys¹ the love of his children. 7. Do you enjoy (= Enjoyest thou) the consolation and friendship of the scribe? 8. Will he come? 9. I shall throw the spear, and thou wilt bear the weapons. 10. The king's son will become king. 11. The army (*werod*) is breaking the doors and walls of the house.



CHAPTER XI.

THE CONSONANT DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS.

The Weak or *n*-Declension.

63. The *n*-Declension contains almost all of the O.E. nouns belonging to the Consonant Declensions. The stem characteristic *n* has been preserved in the oblique

¹ *Brūcan*, to enjoy, takes the genitive case, not the accusative. It means "to have joy of anything."

cases, so that there is no difficulty in distinguishing *n*-stems from the preceding vowel stems.

The *n*-Declension includes (*a*) masculines, (*b*) feminines, and (*c*) neuters. The masculines far outnumber the feminines, and the neuters contain only *ēage*, *eye* and *ēare*, *ear*. The masculines end in *-a*, the feminines and neuters in *-e*.

64. Paradigms of (*a*) *sē hunt-a*, *hunter*; (*b*) *sēo tunge*, *tongue*; (*c*) *ðæt ēage*, *eye*:

<i>Sing. N.</i>	<i>hunt-a</i>	<i>tung-e</i>	<i>ēag-e</i>
<i>G.D.I.</i>	<i>hunt-an</i>	<i>tung-an</i>	<i>ēag-an</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>hunt-an</i>	<i>tung-an</i>	<i>ēag-e</i>
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	<i>hunt-an</i>	<i>tung-an</i>	<i>ēag-an</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>hunt-ena</i>	<i>tung-ena</i>	<i>ēag-ena</i>
<i>D.I.</i>	<i>hunt-um</i>	<i>tung-um</i>	<i>ēag-um</i>

65.

VOCABULARY.

sē adesa, *hatchet*, *adze*.
sē æmetta, *leisure* [empt-iness].
sē bōna (bana), *murderer* [bane].
sēo cirice, *church* [Scotch kirk].
sē cnapa (later, *cnafa*), *boy* [knave].
sē cuma, *stranger* [comer].
ðæt ēare, *ear*.
sēo eorðe, *earth*.
sē gefēra, *companion* [co-farer].
sē guma, *man* [bride-groom¹].
sēo heorte, *heart*.

sē mōna, *moon*.
sēo nǣdre, *adder* [a nadder > an adder²].
sē oxa, *ox*.
sē scēowyrhta, *shoe-maker* [shoe-wright].
sēo sunne, *sun*.
sē tēona, *injury* [teen].
biddan (with dat. of person and gen. of thing³), *to request*, *ask for*.
cwelan, *to die* [quail].

¹ The *r* is intrusive in *-groom*, as it is in *cart-r-idge*, *part-r-idge*, *vag-r-ant*, and *hod-r-se*.

² The *n* has been appropriated by the article. Cf. *an apron* (< *a napron*), *an auger* (< *a nauyer*), *an orange* (< *a norange*), *an umpire* (< *a numpire*).

³ In Mn.E. we say "I request a favor of you"; but in O.E. it was

gescieppan, to create [shape, land-scape, friend-ship].

giefan (with dat. of indirect object), to give.

healdan, to hold.

helpan (with dat.), to help.

scēððan (with dat.), to injure [scathe].

wiðstōndan (-standan) (with dat.), to withstand.

writan, to write.

66.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Sē scēowyrhta brȳcð his æmettan. 2. Ðā guman biddað ðæm cnapan ðæs adesan. 3. Hwā is sē cuma? 4. Hielpst ðū ðæm bōnan? 5. Ic him ne helpe. 6. Ðā bearn scēððað ðæs bōnan ēagum ond ēarum. 7. Sē cuma cwielð on ðære cirican. 8. Sē hunta wiðstent ðæm wulfum. 9. Ðā oxan berað ðæs cnapan gefēran. 10. Sē mōna ond ðā tunglu sind on ðæm heofonum. 11. Ðā huntan healdað ðære nādran tungan. 12. Hē hiere giefð ðā giefa. 13. Ðā werod scēððað ðæs cyninges feldum.

II. 1. Who will bind the mouths of the oxen? 2. Who gives him the gifts? 3. Thou art helping him, and I am injuring him. 4. The boy's companion is dying. 5. His nephew does not enjoy his leisure. 6. The adder's tongue injures the king's companion. 7. The sun is the day's eye. 8. She asks the strangers for the spears. 9. The men's bodies are not here. 10. Is he not (**Nis hē**) the child's murderer? 11. Who creates the bodies and the souls of men? 12. Thou withstandest her. 13. He is not writing.

"I request you (dative) of a favor" (genitive). Cf. *Cymbeline*, III, 6, 92: "We'll mannerly demand thee of thy story."

CHAPTER XII.

Remnants of Other Consonant Declensions.

67. The nouns belonging here are chiefly masculines and feminines. Their stem ended in a consonant other than **n**. The most important of them may be divided as follows: (1) The *foot* Declension, (2) **r**-Stems, and (3) **nd**-Stems. These declensions are all characterized by the prevalence, wherever possible, of **i**-umlaut in certain cases, the case ending being then dropped.

68. (1) The nouns belonging to the *foot* Declension exhibit umlaut most consistently in the N.A. plural.

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	<i>sē fōt</i> (<i>foot</i>)	<i>sē mən</i> (<i>man</i>)	<i>*sē tōð</i> (<i>tooth</i>)	<i>sēo cū</i> (<i>cow</i>)
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	<i>fēt</i>	<i>mēn</i>	<i>tēð</i>	<i>cȳ</i>

NOTE. — The dative singular usually has the same form as the N.A. plural. Here belong also **sēo bōc** (*book*), **sēo burg** (*borough*), **sēo gōs** (*goose*), **sēo lūs** (*louse*), and **sēo mūs** (*mouse*), all with umlauted plurals. Mn.E. preserves only six of the *foot* Declension plurals: *feet, men, teeth, geese, lice, and mice*. The *c* in the last two is an artificial spelling, intended to preserve the sound of voiceless *s*. Mn.E. *kine* (= *cy-en*) is a double plural formed after the analogy of weak stems; Burns in *The Twa Dogs* uses *kye*.

No umlaut is possible in **sēo niht** (*night*) and **sē mōnað** (*month*), plural **niht** and **mōnað** (preserved in Mn.E. *twelvemonth* and *fortnight*).

(2) The **r**-Stems contain nouns expressing kinship, and exhibit umlaut of the dative singular.

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	<i>sē fæder</i>	<i>sē brōðor</i>	<i>sēo mōdor</i>	<i>sēo dohtor</i>	<i>sēo swuster</i>
	(<i>father</i>)	(<i>brother</i>)	(<i>mother</i>)	(<i>daughter</i>)	(<i>sister</i>)
<i>D.</i>	<i>fæder</i>	<i>brēðer</i>	<i>mēder</i>	<i>dēhter</i>	<i>swyster</i>

NOTE. — The N.A. plural is usually the same as the N.A. singular. These umlaut datives are all due to the presence of a former **i**. Cf. Lat. dative singular *patri, frātri, mātri, sorori* (< **sosori*), and Greek *θυγατρὶ*.

(3) The **na**-Stems show umlaut both in the N.A. plural and in the dative singular:

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	sē frēond (<i>friend</i>)	sē fēond (<i>enemy</i>)
<i>D.</i>	frīend	fiend
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	frīend	fiend

NOTE. — Mn.E. *friend* and *fiend* are interesting analogical spellings. When **s** had been added by analogy to the O.E. plurals **frīend** and **fīend**, thus giving the double plurals *friends* and *fiends*, a second singular was formed by dropping the **s**. Thus *friend* and *fiend* displaced the old singulars *frēnd* and *fēnd*, both of which occur in the M.E. *Ormulum*, written about the year 1200.

Summary of O.E. Declensions.

69. A brief, working summary of the O.E. system of declensions may now be made on the basis of gender.

All O.E. nouns are (1) masculine, (2) feminine, or (3) neuter.

(1) The masculines follow the declension of **mūð** (§ 26), except those ending in **-a**, which are declined like **hunta** (§ 64):

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	mūð	<i>N.</i>	hunta
<i>G.</i>	mūðes	<i>G.D.A.</i>	huntan
<i>D.I.</i>	mūðe	<i>I.</i>	huntan
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	mūðas		huntan
<i>G.</i>	mūða		huntena
<i>D.I.</i>	mūðum		huntum

(2) The short-stemmed neuters follow the declension of **hof** (§ 32); the long-stemmed, that of **bearn** (§ 32):

<i>Sing. N.A.</i>	hof	bearn
<i>G.</i>	hofes	bearnes
<i>D.I.</i>	hofe	bearne
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	hofu	bearn
<i>G.</i>	hofa	bearna
<i>D.I.</i>	hofum	bearnum

(3) The feminines follow the declensions of **giefu** and **wund** (§ 38) (the only difference being in the N. singular), except those ending in **-e**, which follow the declension of **tunge** (§ 64):

<i>Sing. N.</i>	giefu	wund	tunge
<i>G.</i>	giefe	wunde	tungan
<i>D.I.</i>	giefe	wunde	tungan
<i>A.</i>	giefe	wunde	tungan
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	giefa	wunda	tungan
<i>G.</i>	giefa	wunda	tungena
<i>D.I.</i>	giefum	wundum	tungum

70.

VOCABULARY.

ac, *but*.

būtan (with dat.), *except, but, without*.

sē Crīst, *Christ*.

sē eorl, *earl, alderman, warrior*.

ðæt ƿnglaƿnd, *England* [Angles' land].

faran, *to go* [fare].

findan, *to find*.

sē God, *God*.

hātan, *to call, name*.

sē hlāford, *lord* [hlāf-weard].

mið (with dat.), *with*.

on (with acc.), *on, against, into*.

tō (with dat.), *to*.

uton (with infin.), *let us*.

NOTE. — O.E. **mōn** (**man**) is frequently used in an indefinite sense for *one, people, they*. It thus takes the place of a passive construction proper: **And man nam ƿā gebrotu ƿe ƿār belifon, twēlf cȳpan fulle**, *And there were taken up of fragments that remained there twelve baskets full*; but more literally, *And one (or they) took the fragments, etc.*; **Qnd Hæstenes wif qnd his suna twēgen mōn brōhte tō ðæm cyninge**, *And Hæsten's wife and his two sons were brought to the king*.

71.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mōn hine hæt Ælfred. 2. Uton faran on ðæt scip. 3. God is cyninga cyning qnd hlāforda hlāford. 4. Sē eorl ne giefð giefa his frīend. 5. Ic næs mið his frīend. 6. Sēo mōdor færð mið hiere dehter on ðā burg. 7. Fintst ðū ðæs

bōceres bēc? 8. Hē bint ealle (all) ðā dēor būtan ðæm wulfum. 9. Ðū eart Crīst, Godes sunu. 10. "Uton bindan ðæs bōnan fēt," cwið hē.

II. 1. Christ is the son of God. 2. Let us call him Cædmon. 3. He throws his spear against the door. 4. Thou art not the earl's brother. 5. He will go with his father to England, but I shall remain (abide) here. 6. Gifts are not given to murderers. 7. Who will find the tracks of the animals? 8. They ask their lord for his weapons (§ 65, Note 3).



CHAPTER XIII.

PRONOUNS.

(1) Personal Pronouns.

72. Paradigms of *ic, I; ðū, thou*. For *hē, hēo, hit*, see § 53.

<i>Sing. N.</i>	<i>ic</i>	<i>ðū</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>mīn</i>	<i>ðīn</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>ðē</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>mē (mec)</i>	<i>ðē (ðec)</i>
<i>Dual N.</i>	<i>wit (we two)</i>	<i>git (ye two)</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>uncer (of us two)</i>	<i>incer (of you two)</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>unc (to or for us two)</i>	<i>inc (to or for you two)</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>unc (us two)</i>	<i>inc (you two)</i>
<i>Plur. N.</i>	<i>wē</i>	<i>gē</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>ūser (ūre)</i>	<i>ēower</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>ēow</i>
<i>A.</i>	<i>ūs (ūsic)</i>	<i>ēow (ēowic)</i>

NOTE 1. — The dual number was soon absorbed by the plural. No relic of it now remains. But when two and only two are referred to, the dual is consistently used in O.E. An example occurs in the case

of the two blind men (*Matthew ix. 27-31*): **Gemiltsa unc, Davīdes sunu!** *Pity us, (thou) Son of David!* **Sīe inc æfter incrum gelēafan,** *Be it unto you according to your faith.*

NOTE 2. — Mn.E. *ye* (< **gē**), the nominative proper, is fast being displaced by *you* (< **ēow**), the old objective. The distinction is preserved in the King James's version of the Bible: *Ye in me, and I in you* (*John xiv. 20*); but not in Shakespeare and later writers.

(2) Demonstrative Pronouns.

73. Paradigm of **ðēs, ðēos, ðis, this.** For the Definite Article as a demonstrative, meaning *that*, see § 28, Note 3.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	ðēs	ðēos	ðis
<i>G.</i>	ðisses	ðisse	ðisses
<i>D.</i>	ðissum	ðisse	ðissum
<i>A.</i>	ðisne	ðās	ðis
<i>I.</i>	ðȳs	—	ðȳs
<i>All Genders.</i>			
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>		ðās	
<i>G.</i>		ðissa	
<i>D.</i>		ðissum	

(3) The Interrogative Pronoun.

74. Paradigm of **hwā, hwæt, who, what?**

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	hwā	hwæt
<i>G.</i>	hwæs	hwæs
<i>D.</i>	hwæm	hwæm
<i>A.</i>	hwone	hwæt
<i>I.</i>	—	hwȳ

NOTE 1. — The derivative interrogatives, **hwæðer** (< ***hwā-ðer**), *which of two?* and **hwilc** (< ***hwā-lic**), *which?* are declined as strong adjectives (§§ 79-82).

NOTE 2. — The instrumental case of **hwā** survives in Mn.E. *why* = *on what account*; the instrumental of the definite article is seen in the

adverbial *the*: *The sooner, the better* = *by how much sooner, by so much better*.

NOTE 3. — How were the Mn.E. relative pronouns, *who* and *which*, evolved from the O.E. interrogatives? The change began in early West Saxon with *hwæt* used in indirect questions (Wulfing, *l.c.* § 310, β): *Nū ic wāt eall hwæt ðū woldest*, *Now I know all that thou desiredst*. The direct question was, *Hwæt woldest ðū*? But the presence of *eall* shows that in Alfred's mind *hwæt* was, in the indirect form, more relative than interrogative.

(4) Relative Pronouns.

75. O.E. had no relative pronoun proper. It used instead (1) the Indeclinable Particle *ðe*, *who*, *whom*, *which*, *that*, (2) the Definite Article (§ 28), (3) the Definite Article with the Indeclinable Particle, (4) the Indeclinable Particle with a Personal Pronoun.

The Definite Article agrees in gender and number with the antecedent. The case depends upon the construction. *The bird which I have* may, therefore, be: —

- (1) *Sē fugol ðe ic hæbbe*;
- (2) *Sē fugol ðone ic hæbbe*;
- (3) *Sē fugol ðone ðe (= the which) ic hæbbe*;
- (4) *Sē fugol ðe hine ic hæbbe*.

NOTE. — O.E. *ðe* agrees closely in construction with Mn.E. relative *that*: (1) Both are indeclinable. (2) Both refer to animate or inanimate objects. (3) Both may be used with phrasal value: *ðy ylcandæge ðe hī hine tō ðæm āde beran wyllað*, *On the same day that (= on which) they intend to bear him to the funeral pile*. (4) Neither can be preceded by a preposition.

(5) Possessive Pronouns.

76. The Possessive Pronouns are *mīn*, *mine*; *ðīn*, *thine*; *ūre*, *our*; *ēower*, *your*; [*sīn*, *his*, *her*, *its*]; *uncer*, *belonging to us two*; *incer*, *belonging to you two*. They

are declined as strong adjectives. The genitives of the Third Personal Pronoun, *his*, *his*, *hiere*, *her*, *hiera*, *their*, are indeclinable.

(6) Indefinite Pronouns.

77. These are *ælc*, *each*, *every*; *ān*, *a*, *an*, *one*; *ænig* (<*ān-ig*), *any*; *nænig* (<*ne-ænig*), *none*; *ōðer*, *other*; *sum*, *one*, *a certain one*; *swilc*, *such*. They are declined as strong adjectives.

NOTE. — O.E. had three established methods of converting an interrogative pronoun into an indefinite: (1) By prefixing *ge*, (2) by prefixing *æg*, (3) by interposing the interrogative between *swā* . . . *swā*: (1) *gehwā*, *each*; *gehwæðer*, *either*; *gehwilc*, *each*; (2) *æghwā*, *each*; *æghwæðer*, *each*; *æghwilc*, *each*; (3) *swā hwā swā*, *whosoever*; *swā hwæðer swā*, *whichever of two*; *swā hwilc swā*, *whosoever*.



CHAPTER XIV.

ADJECTIVES, STRONG AND WEAK.

78. The declension of adjectives conforms in general to the declension of nouns, though a few pronominal inflections have influenced certain cases. Adjectives belong either to (1) the Strong Declension or to (2) the Weak Declension. The Weak Declension is employed when the adjective is preceded by *sē* or *ðēs*, *the*, *that*, or *this*; otherwise, the Strong Declension is employed: *ðā gōdan cyningas*, *the good kings*; *ðēs gōða cyning*, *this good king*; but *gōde cyningas*, *good kings*.

NOTE. — The Weak Declension is also frequently used when the adjective is employed in direct address, or preceded by a possessive

pronoun: **Dryhten, ælmihtiga God . . . ic bidde ðē for ðīnre miclan mildheortnesse**, *Lord, almighty God, I pray thee, for thy great mercy.*

(1) Strong Declension of Adjectives.

(a) Monosyllables.

79. The strong adjectives are chiefly monosyllabic with long stems: **gōd**, *good*; **eald**, *old*; **lōng**, *long*; **swift**, *swift*. They are declined as follows.

80. Paradigm of **gōd**, *good*:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	gōd	gōd	gōd
<i>G.</i>	gōdes	gōdre	gōdes
<i>D.</i>	gōdum	gōdre	gōdum
<i>A.</i>	gōdne	gōde	gōd
<i>I.</i>	gōde	—	gōde
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	gōde	gōda	gōd
<i>G.</i>	gōdra	gōdra	gōdra
<i>D.I.</i>	gōdum	gōdum	gōdum

81. If the stem is short, **-u** is retained as in **giefu** (§ 39, (1)) and **hofu** (§ 33, (1)). Thus **glæd** (§ 27, Note 1), *glad*, and **til**, *useful*, are inflected:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	glæd	gladu	glæd
	til	tilu	til
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	glade	glada	gladu
	tile	tila	tilu

(b) Polysyllables.

82. Polysyllables follow the declension of short monosyllables. The most common terminations are **-en**, *-en*; **-fæst**, *-fast*; **-full**, *-ful*; **-lēas**, *-less*; **-lic**, *-ly*; **-ig**, *-y*: **hæð-en** (**hæð**=*heath*), *heathen*; **stēde-fæst** (**stēde**

= *place*), *steadfast*; **sorg-full** (**sorg**=*sorrow*), *sorrowful*; **cyst-lēas** (**cyst**=*worth*), *worthless*; **eorð-līc** (**eorðe**=*earth*), *earthly*; **blōd-ig** (**blōd**=*blood*), *bloody*. The present and past participles, when inflected and not as weak adjectives, may be classed with the polysyllabic adjectives, their inflection being the same.

Syncopation occurs as in **a**-stems (§ 27, (4)). Thus **hālig**, *holy*, **blīðe**, *blithe*, **berende**, *bearing*, **geboren**, *born*, are thus inflected:

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>Sing. N.</i>	{ hālig	hālgū	hālig
	{ blīðe	blīðu	blīðe
	{ berende	berendu	berende
	{ geboren	geborenu	geboren
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	{ hālge	hālga	hālgū
	{ blīðe	blīða	blīðu
	{ berende	berenda	berendu
	{ geborene	geborena	geborenu

(2) Weak Declension of Adjectives.

83. The Weak Declension of adjectives, whether monosyllabic or polysyllabic, does not differ from the Weak Declension of nouns, except that **-ena** of the genitive plural is usually replaced by **-ra** of the strong adjectives.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
84. Sing. N.	gōda	gōde	gōde
<i>G.</i>	gōdan	gōdan	gōdan
<i>D.I.</i>	gōdan	gōdan	gōdan
<i>A.</i>	gōdan	gōdan	gōde
<i>All Genders.</i>			
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	gōdan		
<i>G.</i>	gōdra (gōdena)		
<i>D.I.</i>	gōdum		

85.

RULE OF SYNTAX.

Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case; but participles, when used predicatively, may remain uninflected (§ 139, § 140).

86.

VOCABULARY.

dēad, *dead*.

eall, *all*.

hāl,¹ *whole, hale*.

heard, *hard*.

ðæt hors, *horse*.

lēof, *dear* [as *lief*].

lȳtel, *little*.

micel, *great, large*.

mōnig, *many*.

niman, *to take* [nimble, numb].

nīwe, *new*.

rīce, *rich, powerful*.

sōð, *true* [sooth-sayer].

stælwierðe,² *serviceable* [stalwart].

swīðe, *very*.

sē tūn, *town, village*.

sē ðegn, *servant, thane, warrior*.

ðæt ðing, *thing*.

sē weg, *way*.

wīs, *wise*.

wið (with acc.), *against*, in a hostile sense [with-stand].

sē ilca, *the same* [of that ilk].

87.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ðās scipu ne sind swīðe swift, ac hīe sind swīðe stælwierðu. 2. Sēo gōðe cwēn giefð ælcum ðegne mōniga giefa. 3. Ðēs wīsa cyning hæfð mōnige mīcele tūnas on his rīce. 4. Nænig mōn is wīs on eallum ðingum. 5. Ðȳ ilcan dæge (§ 98, (2)) mōn fōnd (found) ðone ðegn ðe mīnes wines bēc hæfde. 6. Ealle ðā sēcgas ðā ðe swift hors habbað rīðað wið ðone bōnan. 7. Ðīne fīend sind mīne

¹ **Hālig**, *holy*, contains, of course, the same root. "I find," says Carlyle, "that you could not get any better definition of what 'holy' really is than 'healthy — completely healthy.'"

² This word has been much discussed. The older etymologists explained it as meaning *worth stealing*. A more improbable conjecture is that it means *worth a stall or place*. It is used of ships in the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*. As applied to men, Skeat thinks it meant *good or worthy at stealing*; but the etymology is still unsettled.

frīend. 8. Sē micela stān ðone ðe ic on mīnum hƿndum hæbbe is swīðe heard. 9. Hīe sceððað ð.ēin ealdum horsum. 10. Uton niman ðās tilan giefa ƿnd hīe beran tō ūrum lēofum bearnum.

II. 1. These holy men are wise and good. 2. Are the little children very dear to the servants (dat. without tō)? 3. Gifts are not given (§ 70, Note 1) to rich men. 4. All the horses that are in the king's fields are swift. 5. These stones are very large and hard. 6. He takes the dead man's spear and fights against the large army. 7. This new house has many doors. 8. My ways are not your ways. 9. Whosoever chooses me, him I also (ēac) choose. 10. Every man has many friends that are not wise.



CHAPTER XV.

NUMERALS.

88. Numerals are either (a) Cardinal, expressing pure number, *one, two, three*; or (b) Ordinal, expressing rank or succession, *first, second, third*.

(a) Cardinals.

89. The Cardinals fall into the three following syntactic groups:

GROUP I.

1. ān
2. twēgen [twain]
3. ðrie

These numerals are inflected adjectives. **Ān**, *one, an*, *a*, being a long stemmed monosyllable, is declined like **gōd** (§ 80). The weak form, **āna**, means *alone*.

Twēgen and **ðrie**, which have no singular, are thus declined:

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Plur. N.A.</i>	twēgen	twā	twā (tū)	ðrie	ðrēo	ðrēo
<i>G.</i>	twēgra	twēgra	twēgra	ðrēora	ðrēora	ðrēora
<i>D.</i>	twæm	twæm	twæm	ðrīm	ðrīm	ðrīm
	(twām)	(twām)	(twām)			

90.

GROUP II.

4. fēower	12. twelf
5. fif	13. ðrēotiene
6. siex	14. fēowertiene
7. seofon	15. fiftiene
8. eahta	16. siextiene
9. nigon	17. seofontiene
10. tien	18. eahtatiene
11. endlefan	19. nigontiene

These words are used chiefly as uninflected adjectives: on *gewitscipe ðrēora oppe fēower bisceopa*, *on testimony of three or four bishops*; on *siex dagum*, *in six days*; *ān nādre ðe hæfde nigon hēafdu*, *a serpent which had nine heads*; *æðeling eahtatiene wintra*, *a prince of eighteen winters*.

91.

GROUP III.

20. twēntig	80. hundeahtatig
21. ān ond twēntig	90. hundnigontig
30. ðritig	100. hund
40. fēowertig	200. twā hund
50. fiftig	1000. ðūsend
60. siextig	2000. twā ðūsend
70. hundseofontig	

All these numbers are employed as neuter singular nouns, and are followed by the genitive plural: *Næfde hē pēah mā ðonne twēntig hryðera*, and *twēntig scēapa*, and

twēntig swȳna, He did not have, however, more than twenty (of) cattle, and twenty (of) sheep, and twenty (of) swine; Hīe hæfdon hundeahtatig scipa, They had eighty ships; twā hund mīla brād, two hundred miles broad; ðær wæron seofon hund gūðfanena genumen, there were seven hundred standards captured; ān ðūsend mōnna, a thousand men; Hannibales folces wæs twā ðūsend ofslagen, Of Hannibal's men there were two thousand slain; Hīe ācuron eñdlefān ðūsend mōnna, They chose eleven thousand men.

NOTE 1. — Group III is rarely inflected. Almost the only inflectional endings that are added are (1) **-es**, a genitive singular termination for the numerals in **-tig**, and (2) **-e**, a dative singular for **hund**. (1) The first is confined to adjectives expressing extent of space or time, as, *eald*, *old*; *brād*, *broad*; *hēah*, *high*; and *lōng*, *long*: *ðæt is ðrītiges mīla lōng, that is thirty miles long; Hē wæs ðrītiges gēara eald, He was thirty years old.* (2) The second is employed after *mid*: *mid twām hunde scipa, with two hundred ships; mid ðrīm hunde mōnna, with three hundred men; ðær wearð . . . Regulus gefangen mid V hunde mōnna, There was Regulus captured with five hundred men.*

The statement made in nearly all the grammars that **hund** occurs as a nominative and accusative plural is without foundation.

NOTE 2. — Many numerals, otherwise indeclinable, are used in the genitive plural with the indefinite pronoun **sum**, which then means *one of* a certain number. In this peculiar construction, the numeral always precedes **sum**: *fēowera sum, one of four (= with three others); Hē sǣde þæt hē syxa sum ofslōge syxtig, He said that he, with five others, slew sixty (whales); Hē wæs fēowertigra sum, He was one of forty.*

NOTE 3. — These are the most common constructions with the Cardinals. The forms in **-tig** have only recently been investigated. A study of Wūlfing's citations shows that Alfred occasionally uses the forms in **-tig** (1) as adjectives with plural inflections: *mid XXXgum cyningum, with thirty kings*; and (2) as nouns with plural inflections: *æfter siextigum daga, after sixty days.* But both constructions are rare.

(b) Ordinals.

92. The Ordinals, except the first two, are formed from the Cardinals. They are:

1. forma, āresta, fyrsta	11. endlefta
2. oðer, æfterra	12. twelfta
3. ðridda	13. ðrēotēoða
4. fēorða	14. fēowertēoða
5. fifta	15. fiftēoða
6. siexta	etc.
7. sefoða	20. twēntigoða
8. eahtoða	21. ān and twēntigoða
9. nigoða	30. ðritigoða
10. tēoða	etc.

NOTE.—There are no Ordinals corresponding to **hund** and **ðūsēnd**.

With the exception of **oðer** (§ 77), all the Ordinals are declined as Weak Adjectives; the article, however, as in Mn.E., is frequently omitted: **Brūtus wæs sē forma consul**, *Brutus was the first consul*; **Hēr ēndað sēo āreste bōc, and onginneð sēo oðer**, *Here the first book ends, and the second begins*; **ðȳ fiftan dæge**, *on the fifth day*; **on ðāem tēoðan gēare hiera gewinnes**, *in the tenth year of their strife*; **Hēo wæs twelfte**, *She was twelfth*; **Sē wæs fēorða frōm Augusto**, *He was fourth from Augustus*.



CHAPTER XVI.

ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, AND CONJUNCTIONS.

Adverbs.

93. (1) Adverbs are formed by adding **-e** or **-lice** to the corresponding adjectives: **sōð**, *true*; **sōðe** or **sōðlice**, *truly*; **earmlīc**, *wretched*; **earmlīce**, *wretchedly*; **wīd**,

wide; **wīde**, *widely*; **micel**, *great*; **micle** (**micele**), *greatly*, *much*.

(2) The terminations **-e** and **-lice** are replaced in some adverbs by **-unga** or **-inga**: **eallunga**, *entirely*; **fāringa**, *suddenly*; **grundlunga**, *from the ground, completely*.

NOTE 1. — The **l** is intrusive in the last adverb. In Mn.E. *headlong*, originally an adverb, we have not only a similar intrusive **l**, but the only survival of O.E. **-unga**.

(3) The genitive case is frequently used adverbially: **sūðewardes**, *southwards*; **ealles**, *altogether, entirely*; **dæges**, *by day*; **nihtes**, *by night*; **ðæs**, *from that time, afterwards*. Cf. **hys** (= *his*) **weges** in *Ðonne rīdeð ælc hys weg*, *Then rides each his way*.

NOTE 2. — The adverbial genitive is abundantly preserved in Mn.E. *Always, crossways, sideways, needs* (= *necessarily*), *sometimes*, etc., are not plurals, but old genitive singulars. The same construction is seen in *of course, of a truth, of an evening, of old, of late*, and similar phrases.

(4) Dative and instrumental plurals may be used as adverbs: **hwīlum**, *at times, sometimes* [*whilom*]; **stundum** (**stund** = *period*), *from time to time*; **miclum**, *greatly*. Especially common is the suffix **-mælum** (**mæ**l = *time* [*meal*]), preserved adverbially in Mn.E. *piecemeal*: **dropmælum**, *drop by drop*; **styccemælum** (**stycce** = *piece*), *piecemeal, here and there*.

(5) The suffix **-an** usually denotes motion from:

hēr, *here*.

ðær, *there*.

hwær, *where?*

hider, *hither*.

ðider, *thither*.

hwider, *whither?*

heonan, *hence*.

ðqnan, *thence*.

hwqnan, *whence?*

norðan, *from the north*.

ēastan, *from the east*.

hindan, *from behind*.

feorran, *from far*.

ūtan, *from without*.

(6) The adverb **rihte** (**riht**=*right, straight*) denotes *motion toward* in **norðrihte**, *northward, due north*; **ēastrihte**, *due east*; **sūðrihte**, *due south*; **westrihte**, *due west*.

Prepositions.

94. The nominative is the only case in O.E. that is never governed by a preposition. Of the other cases, the dative and accusative occur most frequently with prepositions.

(1) The prepositions that are most frequently found with the dative are:

æfter , <i>after</i> .	from (fram), <i>from, by</i> .
æt , <i>at</i> .	mid , <i>with</i> .
be (bī), <i>by, near, about</i> .	of , <i>of, from</i> .
betwēonan (betuh), <i>between</i> .	tō , <i>to</i> .
būtan (būton), <i>except</i> .	tōforan , <i>before</i> .
for , <i>for</i> .	tōweard , <i>toward</i> .

(2) The following prepositions require the accusative:

geond , <i>throughout</i> [<i>be-yond</i>].	ðurh , <i>through</i> .
ofer , <i>over, upon</i> .	ymbe , <i>about, around</i> [<i>um-while</i>].
oð , <i>until, up to</i> .	

(3) The preposition **on** (rarely **in**), meaning *into*, is usually followed by the accusative; but meaning *in, on, or during*, it takes the dative or instrumental. The preposition **wið**, meaning *toward*, may be followed by the genitive, dative, or accusative; but meaning *against*, and implying *motion* or *hostility*, the accusative is more common.

(4) The following phrases are used prepositionally with the dative:

be norðan, north of.
be ēastan, east of.
be sūðan, south of.
be westan, west of.

tō ēacan, in addition to.
on emnlang (efn-lang = evenly
long), along.
tō emnes, along.

(5) Prepositions regularly precede the noun or pronoun that they introduce; but by their adverbial nature they are sometimes drawn in front of the verb: *And him wæs mycel menegu tō gegaderod, And there was gathered unto him a great multitude.* In relative clauses introduced by ðe, the preceding position is very common: *sēo scīr . . . ðe hē on būde, the district, . . . which he dwelt in (= which he in-habited); Hē wæs swyðe spēdig man on ðæm æhtum ðe hiera spēda on bēoð, He was a very rich man in those possessions which their riches consist in; nȳhst ðæm tūne ðe sē dēada man on līð, nearest the town that the dead man lies in.*

Conjunctions.

95. (1) The most frequently occurring conjunctions are:

ac, but.	for ðȳ, therefore.
ǣr, before, ere.	gif, if.
būtan (būton), except that, unless.	hwæðer, whether.
ēac, also [eke].	ond (and), and.
for ðæm	oððe, or.
for ðæm ðe,	ðæt, that, so that.
for ðon,	ðeah, though, however.
for ðon ðe,	

(2) The correlative conjunctions are :

ægðer ge ge,	both and.
ægðer oððer	} either or.
oððe oððe	

nē	nē,	neither	nor.
sam	sam,	whether	or.
swā	swā	{	the the.
			as as.
ōā	ōā	{	when then.
ōonne	ōonne		



CHAPTER XVII.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

Adjectives.

96. (1) Adjectives are regularly compared by adding *-ra* for the comparative, and *-ost* (rarely *-est*) for the superlative:

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
earm, <i>poor</i>	earmra	earmost
rīce, <i>rich</i>	rīcra	rīcost
smæl, <i>narrow</i>	smæltra	smalost
brād, <i>broad</i>	brādra (brædra)	brādost
swift, <i>swift</i>	swiftra	swiftost

(2) Forms with *i*-umlaut usually have superlative in *-est*:

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
eald, <i>old</i>	ieldra	ieldest
lōng, <i>long</i>	lēngra	lēngest
strōng, <i>strong</i>	strēngra	strēngest
geong, <i>young</i>	giengra	giengest
hēah, <i>high</i>	hīerra	hīehst

(3) The following adjectives are compared irregularly:

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
gōð , good	bętra	bętst
lýt el, little, small	læss a	læss t
micel , great, much	mā ra	mæss t
yfel , bad	wiers a	wier st

(4) The positive is sometimes supplied by an adverb:

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
feor , far	fier ra	fier rest
nēah , near	nē arra	nī ehst
æ r, before	æ rra, former	æ rest, first

(5) The comparatives all follow the Weak Declension. The superlatives, when preceded by the definite article, are weak; but when used predicatively they are frequently strong: *sē læss*a dæl, *the least part*; Ðonne cymeð *sē* man *sē* ðæt swiftoste hors hafað *tō* ðæm ærestan dæle and *tō* ðæm mæsstan, *Then comes the man that has the swiftest horse to the first part and to the largest*. But, ðæt bȳne land is *easteward brādost* (not *brādoste*), *the cultivated land is broadest eastward*; and (hit) bið ealra wyrta mæsst, *and it is largest of all herbs*; Ac hyra (= hiera) *ār* is mæsst on ðæm gafole ðe ðā Finnas him gyldað, *But their income is greatest in the tribute that the Fins pay them*.

(6) The comparative is usually followed by ðonne and the nominative case: *Sē hwæl bið micle læss*a ðonne ððre hwalas, *That whale is much smaller than other whales*; Ðā wunda ðæs mōdes beoð dīgelran ðonne ðā wunda ðæs lichaman, *The wounds of the mind are more secret than the wounds of the body*.

But when ðonne is omitted, the comparative is followed by the dative: *Ūre Alhesend, ðe mā*ra is *qud*

mærra eallum gesceaftum, *Our Redeemer, who is greater and more glorious than all created things*; **nē ongeat hē nō hiene selfne beþran ðōðrum gōðum mōnnum**, *nor did he consider himself better than other good men.*

Adverbs.

97. (1) Adverbs are regularly compared by adding **-or** for the comparative and **-ost** (rarely **-est**) for the superlative :

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
georne , willingly	geornor	geornost
swiðe , very, severely	swiðor , more	swiðost , most, chiefly
æf , before	æfor , formerly	ærest , first
norð , northwards	norðor	norðmest ¹

(2) The comparatives of a few adverbs may be found by dropping **-ra** of the corresponding adjective form :

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
lone , long	lēn	lēnēst
micle , much	mā	mæst
wel , well	bē	bēst

Expressions of Time.

98. (1) Duration of time and extent of space are usually expressed by the accusative case: **Ealle ðā hwīle ðe ðæt līc bið inne**, *All the time that the body is within*; **twēgen dagas**, *for two days*; **ealne weg**, *all the way, always.*

¹ This is really a double superlative, **m** being itself an old superlative suffix. Cf. Latin *opti-m-us*. In Mn.E. *northmost* and *hindmost*, **-m-est** has been confused with **-most**, with which etymologically it has nothing to do,

(2) Time when is more often expressed by the instrumental case when no preposition is used: *ðý ilcan dæge, the same day; ælce gēare, each year; ðý gēare, that year; ælce dæge, each day.*

(3) Time or space within which is expressed by *on* and the dative: *on sumera, in summer; on wintra, in winter; on fīf dagum, in five days; on fīf mīlum, in five miles; on ðissum gēare, in this year; on ðæm tīman, in those times.* Sometimes by the genitive without a preceding preposition: *ðæs gēares, in that year.*

99.

VOCABULARY.

<i>ðæt gefylce</i> [folc], <i>troop, division.</i>	<i>sē sige, victory.</i>
<i>ðæt lōnd</i> (land), <i>land.</i>	<i>sige¹ habban, to win (the) victory.</i>
<i>sēo mīl, mile.</i>	
<i>ōðer . . . oðer, the one . . . the other; the former . . . the latter.</i>	<i>sprecan, to speak.</i>
	<i>ðæt swīn (swȳn), swine, hog.</i>
	<i>wēste, waste.</i>

100.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hē hæfð ðrēo swiðe swift hors. 2. Ic hæbbe nigon-tiene scēap and mā ðonne twēntig swīna. 3. Sēo gōde cwēn cīest twā hund monna. 4. Uton feohtan wið ðā Dene mid ðrīm hunde scipa. 5. And hīe wāron on twām gefyleum: on oðrum wæs² Bāchsecg and Halfdene ðā hāðnan cýningas, and on oðrum wāron ðā eorlas. 6. Ðū spriest sōðlice. 7. Donne rīt ælc mon his weg. 8. Æfter monigum dagum, hæfde Ælfred cýning³ sige. 9. Ðis lond is wēste stycce-mælum. 10. Ðes feld is fiftiges mīla brād. 11. Æl-

¹ **Sige** usually, but not invariably, precedes **habban**.

² See p. 100, note on **gefeahht**.

³ The proper noun comes first in appositive expressions: **Ælfred cýning, Sídroc eorl, Hēahmund bisceop.**

fred cyning hæfde mōnige frīend, for ðæm ðe hē wæs ægðer ge wīs ge gōd. 12. Ðā hwalas, ðe ðū ymbe spricst, sind micle lāssan oðrum hwalum. 13. Hēo is ieldre ðonne hiere swuster, ac mīn brōðor is ieldra ðonne hēo. 14. Wē cumað tō ðæm tūne ælce gēare. 15. Ðā mēn ðe ðā swift-ostan hors hæfdon wæron mid ðæm Denum fēower dagas.

II. 1. Our army (**weroð**) was in two divisions: one was large, the other was small. 2. The richest men in the kingdom have more (**mā**) than thirty ships. 3. He was much wiser than his brother. 4. He fights against the Northumbrians with two ships. 5. After three years King Alfred gained the victory. 6. Whosoever chooses these gifts, chooses well. 7. This man's son is both wiser and better than his father. 8. When the king rides, then ride his thanes also. 9. The richest men are not always (**ā**) the wisest men.



CHAPTER XVIII.

STRONG VERBS: CLASS I. (See § 17.)

Syntax of Moods.

101. Of the three hundred simple verbs belonging to the O.E. Strong Conjugation, it is estimated ¹ that seventy-eight have preserved their strong inflections in Mn.E., that eighty-eight have become weak, and that the remaining one hundred and thirty-four have entirely disappeared, their places being taken in most cases by verbs of Latin origin introduced through the Norman-French.

¹ Lounsbury, *English Language*, Part II, § 241.

NOTE.—Only the simple or primitive verbs, not the compound forms, are here taken into consideration. The proportionate loss, therefore, is really much greater. O.E. abounded in formative prefixes. “Thus from the Anglo-Saxon **flōwan**, *to flow*, ten new compounds were formed by the addition of various prefixes, of which ten, only one, **oferflōwan**, *to overflow*, survives with us. In a similar manner, from the verb **sittan**, *to sit*, thirteen new verbs were formed, of which not a single one is to be found to-day.” Lounsbury, *ib.* Part I, p. 107.

102. Class I: The “Drive” Conjugation.

Vowel Succession : ī, ā, i, i.

INFINITIVE.	PRETERIT SING.	PRETERIT PLUR.	PAST PART.
Drif-an	drāf	drif-on	gedrif-en , <i>to drive</i> .

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic drif-e	<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic } drif-e
2.	ðū drif-st (drif-est)	2.	ðū }
3.	hē drif-ð (drif-eð)	3.	hē }
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } drif-að	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } drif-en
2.	gē }	2.	gē }
3.	hīe }	3.	hīe }
PRETERIT.		PRETERIT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic drāf	<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic } drif-e
2.	ðū drif-e	2.	ðū }
3.	hē drāf	3.	hē }
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } drif-on	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } drif-en
2.	gē }	2.	gē }
3.	hīe }	3.	hīe }

Imperative.	Infinitive.	Present Participle.
<i>Sing.</i> 2. drif	drif-an	drif-ende
<i>Plur.</i> 1. drif-an		
2. drif-að	Gerund.	Past Participle.
	tō drif-anne (-enne)	gedrif-en

Tense Formation of Strong Verbs.

103. (1) It will be seen from the conjugation of *drīfan* that the *present stem* in all strong verbs is used throughout the present indicative, the present subjunctive, the imperative, the infinitive, the gerund, and the present participle. More than half of the endings, therefore, of the Strong Conjugation are added directly to the present stem.

(2) That the *preterit singular stem* is used in only two forms of the verb, the 1st and 3d persons singular of the preterit indicative: *Ic drāf, hē drāf.*

(3) That the *preterit plural stem* is used in the preterit plural indicative, in the second person of the preterit singular indicative, and in the singular and plural of the preterit subjunctive.

(4) That the *stem of the past participle* (*gedrif-*) is used for no other form.

Syntax of the Verb.

104. The Indicative Mood¹ represents the predicate *as a reality*. It is used both in independent and in dependent clauses, its function in O.E. corresponding with its function in Mn.E.

105. The Subjunctive Mood represents the predicate *as an idea*.² It is of far more frequent occurrence in O.E. than in Mn.E.

¹ Usage sanctions *mood*, but the better spelling would be *mode*. It is from the Lat. *modus*, whereas *mood* (= *temper*) is O.E. *mōd*.

² Gildersleeve's *Latin Grammar*, § 255.

1. When used in independent clauses it denotes desire, command, or entreaty, and usually precedes its subject: *Sīe ðīn nama gehālgod, Hallowed be Thy name; Ne swerigen gē, Do not swear.*

2. In dependent clauses it denotes uncertainty, possibility, or mere futurity.¹ (a) Concessive clauses (introduced by *ðēah, though*) and (b) temporal clauses (introduced by *ær, ær ðæm ðe, before*) are rarely found with any other mood than the subjunctive. The subjunctive is also regularly used in Alfredian prose (c) after verbs of saying, even when no suggestion of doubt or discredit attaches to the narration.² "Whether the statement refer to a fact or not, whether the subject-matter be vouched for by the reporter, as regards its objective reality and truth, the subjunctive does not tell. It simply represents a statement as reported"³: *ðēah man āsette twēgen fāetels full ealað oððe wāteres, though one set two vessels full of ale or water; ær ðæm ðe hit eall forhergod wære, before it was all ravaged; Hē sāde ðæt Norðmanna land wære swyðe lang and swyðe smæl, He said that the Norwegians' land was very long and very narrow.*

¹ Thus when Alfred writes that an event took place *before* the founding of Rome, he uses the subjunctive: *ær ðæm ðe Rōmeburh getimbrod wære = before Rome were founded*; but, *æfter ðæm ðe Rōmeburh getimbrod wæs = after Rome was founded.*

² "By the time of Ælfric, however, the levelling influence of the indicative [after verbs of saying] has made considerable progress." — Gorrell, *Indirect Discourse in Anglo-Saxon* (Dissertation, 1895), p. 101.

³ Hotz, *On the Use of the Subjunctive Mood in Anglo-Saxon* (Zürich, 1882).

106. The Imperative is the mood of command or intercession: *Iōhannes, cum tō mē, John, come to me; And forgyf ūs ūre gyltas, And forgive us our trespasses; Ne drif ūs fram ðē, Do not drive us from thee.*

107. (1) The Infinitive and Participles are used chiefly in verb-phrases (§§ 138–141); but apart from this function, the Infinitive, being a neuter noun, may serve as the subject or direct object of a verb. *Hātan (to command, bid), lāetan (to let, permit), and onginnan (to begin)* are regularly followed by the Infinitive: *Hine rīdan lyste, To ride pleased him; Hēt ðā bære sættan, He bade set down the bier;¹ Lāetað ðā lýtlingas tō mē cuman, Let the little ones come to me; ðā ongann hē sprecan, then began he to speak.*

(2) The Participles may be used independently in the dative absolute construction (an imitation of the Latin ablative absolute), usually for the expression of time:² *Him ðā gýt sprecendum, While he was yet speaking; gefylledum dagum, the days having been fulfilled.*

108. The Gerund, or Gerundial Infinitive, is used:

(1) To express purpose: *Ūt ēode sē sāwere his sād tō sāwenne, Out went the sower his seed to sow.*

(2) To expand or determine the meaning of a noun or adjective: *Sýmōn, ic hæbbe ðē tō sæcgenne sum ðing, Simon, I have something to say to thee; Hit is scōndlic ymb swelc tō sprecanne, It is shameful to speak about such things.*

¹ Not, *He commanded the bier to be set down.* The Mn. E. passive in such sentences is a loss both in force and directness.

² Callaway, *The Absolute Participle in Anglo-Saxon* (Dissertation, 1889), p. 19.

(3) After **bēon** (**wesan**) to denote duty or necessity: **Hwæt is nū mā ymbe ðis tō sprecanne**, *What more is there now to say about this?* **ðonne is tō geðencenne hwæt Crīst self cwæð**, *then it behooves to bethink what Christ himself said.*

NOTE. — The Gerund is simply the dative case of the Infinitive after **tō**. It began very early to supplant the simple Infinitive; hence the use of *to* with the Infinitive in Mn.E. As late as the Elizabethan age the Gerund sometimes replaced the Infinitive even after the auxiliary verbs:

“Some pagan shore,
Where these two Christian armies *might combine*
The blood of malice in a vein of league,
And not *to spend* it so unneighbourly.”

— *King John*, V, 2, 39.

When *to* lost the meaning of purpose and came to be considered as a merely formal prefix, *for* was used to supplement the purpose element: *What went ye out for to see?*¹

¹ This is not the place to discuss the Gerund in Mn.E., the so-called “infinitive in *-ing*.” The whole subject has been befogged for the lack of an accepted nomenclature, one that shall do violence neither to grammar nor to history.

CHAPTER XIX.

STRONG VERBS: CLASSES II AND III.

109. Class II: The "Choose" Conjugation.

Vowel Succession: ēo, ēa, u, o.

INFINITIVE. ¹	PRET. SING.	PRET. PLUR. ²	PAST PART. ²
cēos-an,	cēas,	cur-on,	gecor-en, to choose,

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic cēos-e	<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic } cēos-e
2.	ǃū cīest (cēos-est)	2.	ǃū }
3.	hē cīest (cēos-eǃ)	3.	hē }
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } cēos-aǃ	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } cēos-en
2.	gē }	2.	gē }
3.	hīe }	3.	hīe }
PRETERIT.		PRETERIT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic cēas	<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic } cur-e
2.	ǃū cur-e	2.	ǃū }
3.	hē cēas	3.	hē }
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } cur-on	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē } cur-en
2.	gē }	2.	gē }
3.	hīe }	3.	hīe }

Imperative.	Infinitive.	Present Participle.
<i>Sing.</i> 2. cēos	cēos-an	cēos-ende
<i>Plur.</i> 1. cēos-an		
2. cēos-aǃ	Gerund.	Past Participle.
	tō cēos-anne (-enne)	gecor-en

¹ A few verbs of Class II have ū instead of ēo in the infinitive:

brūcan, brēac, brucon, gebrocen, to enjoy [brook].

būgan, bēag, bugon, gebogen, to bend, bow.

² By a law known as Grammatical Change, final ǃ, s, and h of strong verbs generally become d, r, and g, respectively, in the preterit plural and past participle.

110. Class III: The "Bind" Conjugation.

Vowel Succession: $\begin{Bmatrix} i \\ e \end{Bmatrix}$, a, u, $\begin{Bmatrix} u \\ o \end{Bmatrix}$.

The present stem ends in **m**, **n**, **l**, **r**, or **h**, + one or more consonants:

m: belimp-an, $\begin{Bmatrix} \text{belomp} \\ \text{belamp} \end{Bmatrix}$, belump-on, belump-en, to belong.

n: bind-an, $\begin{Bmatrix} \text{bōnd} \\ \text{band} \end{Bmatrix}$, bund-on, gebund-en, to bind.

l: help-an, healp, hulp-on, geholp-en, to help.

r: weorð-an, wearð, wurd-on, geword-en, to become.

h: gefeoht-an, gefeaht, gefuht-on, gefoht-en, to fight.

NOTE 1. — If the present stem ends in a nasal (**m**, **n**) + a consonant, the past participle retains the **u** of the pret. plur.; but if the present stem ends in a liquid (**l**, **r**) or **h**, + a consonant, the past participle has **o** instead of **u**.

NOTE 2. — Why do we not find *halp, *warð, and *faht in the pret. sing.? Because **a** before **l**, **r**, or **h**, + a consonant, underwent "breaking" to **ea**. Breaking also changes every **e** followed by **r** or **h**, + a consonant, to **eo**: weorðan (< *werðan), feohtan (< *fehtan).

111. Indicative.

PRESENT.

Sing. 1. Ic bind-e
2. ƿū bintst (bind-est)
3. hē bint (bind-eƿ)

Plur. 1. wē }
2. gē } bind-aƿ
3. hīe }

PRETERIT.

Sing. 1. Ic bōnd
2. ƿū bund-e
3. hē bōnd

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

Sing. 1. Ic }
2. ƿū } bind-e
3. hē }

Plur. 1. wē }
2. gē } bind-en
3. hīe }

PRETERIT.

Sing. 1. Ic }
2. ƿū } bund-e
3. hē }

PRETERIT.			PRETERIT.		
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	} bund-on	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	} bund-en
2.	gē		2.	gē	
3.	hīe		3.	hīe	
Imperative.			Infinitive.		
<i>Sing.</i> 2.	bind		bind-an		bind-ende
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	bind-an				
2.	bind-að		Gerund.		Past Participle.
			to bind-anne (-enne)		gebund-en

112.

VOCABULARY.

ðæt gefeoht, *fight, battle.*

sēo geræcednes, *narration* [ræc-can].

ðæt gesceap, *creation* [sciepan].

sēo hergung (§ 39, (3)), *harrying, plundering* [hergian].

sē meðu (meðo) (§ 51), *mead.*

sēo meolc, *milk.*

sē middangeard, *world* [middle-yard].

sē munuc, *monk* [monachus].

sēo mýre, *mare* [mearh].

hē sǣde, *he said.*

hīe sǣdon, *they said.*

sēo spēð, *riches* [speed].

spēðig, *rich, prosperous* [speedy].

sēo tīd, *time* [tide].

unspēðig, *poor.*

sē westanwind, *west-wind.*

ðæt wīn, *wine.*

ārisan,	ārās,	ārison,	ārisen,	to arise.
bīdan,	bād,	bidon,	gebiden,	to remain, expect (with gen.)
drēogan, ¹	drēag,	drugon,	gedrogen,	to endure, suffer.
drincan,	dronc,	druncon,	gedruncon,	to drink.
findan,	fond,	fundon,	gefunden,	to find.
geswīcan	geswāc,	geswicon,	geswicen,	to cease, cease from (with gen.)
iernan (yrnan),	qm,	urnon,	geurnen,	to run.
onginnan,	ongqm,	ongunnon,	ongunnen,	to begin.
rīdan,	rād,	ridon,	geriden,	to ride.
singan,	sqng,	sungon,	gesungen,	to sing.
writan,	wrāt,	writon,	gewriten,	to write.

¹ Cf. the Scotch "to dree one's weird" = to endure one's fate.

113.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Æfter ðissum wordum, sē munuc wrāt ealle ðā gerecednesse on ānre bēc.* 2. *Ðā eorlas ridon ūp ær ðæm ðe ðā Dene ðæs gefeohtes geswicen.* 3. *Cædmon song ærest be middangeardes gesceape.* 4. *Sē cyning qnd ðā ricostan men drincað mýran meole, qnd ðā unspēdigan drincað medu.* 5. *Qnd hē ārās qnd sē wind geswāc.* 6. *Hie sædon ðæt hie ðær westwindes biden.* 7. *Hwæt is nū mā ymbe ðās ðing tō sprecanne?* 8. *Ðā seġgas ongunnon geswīcan ðære hergunga.* 9. *Ðā bēag ðæt lōnd ðær ēastryhte, oððe sēo sē in on ðæt lōnd.* 10. *Ðās lōnd belimpað tō ðæm Englum.* 11. *Ðēah ðā Dene ealne dæg gefuhten, giet hæfde Ælfred cyning sige.* 12. *Qnd ðæs (afterwards) ymbe ānne mōnað gefeaht Ælfred cyning wið ealne ðone hēre æt Wiltūne.*

II. 1. The most prosperous men drank mare's milk and wine, but the poor men drank mead. 2. I suffered many things before you began to help me (dat.). 3. About two days afterwards (**Ðæs ymbe twēgen dagas**), the plundering ceased. 4. The king said that he fought against all the army (**hēre**). 5. Although the Dānes remained one month (§ 98, (1)), they did not begin to fight. 6. These gifts belonged to my brother. 7. The earls were glad because their lord was (indicative) with them. 8. What did you find? 9. Then wrote he about (**be**) the wise man's deeds. 10. What more is there to endure?

CHAPTER XX.

STRONG VERBS: CLASSES IV, V, VI, AND VII.
CONTRACT VERBS.

[The student can now complete the conjugation for himself (§ 103). Only the principal parts will be given.]

114. Class IV: The "Bear" Conjugation.

Vowel Succession: e, æ, *ǣ*, o.

The present stem ends in *l*, *r*, or *m*, no consonant following:

<i>l</i> :	<i>hel-an</i> , <i>hæl</i> ,	<i>hǣl-on</i> ,	<i>gehol-en</i> , <i>to conceal</i> .
<i>r</i> :	<i>ber-an</i> , <i>bær</i> ,	<i>bǣr-on</i> ,	<i>gebor-en</i> , <i>to bear</i> .

The two following verbs are slightly irregular:

<i>m</i> :	{ <i>nim-an</i> , <i>nōm</i> (<i>nam</i>), <i>nōm-on</i> (<i>nām-on</i>), <i>genum-en</i> , <i>to take</i> .		
	{ <i>cum-an</i> , <i>c(w)ōm</i> , <i>c(w)ōm-on</i> , <i>gecum-en</i> , <i>to come</i> .		

115. Class V: The "Give" Conjugation.

Succession of Vowels: e (*ie*), æ, *ǣ*, e.

The present stem ends in a single consonant, never a liquid or nasal:

<i>met-an</i> ,	<i>mæt</i> ,	<i>mǣton</i> ,	<i>gemet-en</i> ,	<i>to measure, mete</i> .
<i>gief-an</i> ,	<i>geaf</i> ,	<i>gēaf-on</i> ,	<i>gegief-en</i> ,	<i>to give</i> .

NOTE 1. — The palatal consonants, *g*, *c*, and *sc*, convert a following *e* into *ie*, *æ* into *ea*, and *ǣ* into *ēa*. Hence *giefan* (<**gefan*), *geaf* (<**gæf*), *gēafon* (<**gǣfon*), *gegiefen* (<**gegefen*). This change is known as Palatalization. See § 8.

NOTE 2. — The infinitives of the following important verbs are only apparently exceptional:

<i>biddan</i> ,	<i>bæd</i> ,	<i>bǣd-on</i> ,	<i>gebed-en</i> ,	<i>to ask for</i> [<i>bid</i>].
<i>licgan</i> ,	<i>læg</i> ,	<i>lǣg-on</i> ,	<i>geleg-en</i> ,	<i>to lie, extend</i> .
<i>sittan</i> ,	<i>sæt</i> ,	<i>sǣt-on</i> ,	<i>geset-en</i> ,	<i>to sit</i> .

The original *e* reappears in the participial stems. It was changed to *i* in the present stems on account of a former *-jan* in the infinitive (*bid-jan*, etc.). See § 61. To the same cause is due the doubling of consonants in the infinitive. All simple consonants in O.E., with the exception of *r*, were doubled after a short vowel, when an original *j* followed.

116. Class VI: The "Shake" Conjugation.

Succession of Vowels: *a, ȝ, ȝ, a*.

<i>scac-an</i> ,	<i>scȝc</i> ,	<i>scȝc-on</i> ,	<i>gescac-en</i> ,	<i>to shake</i> .
<i>far-an</i> ,	<i>fȝr</i> ,	<i>fȝr-on</i> ,	<i>gefar-en</i> ,	<i>to go [fare]</i> .

117. Class VII: The "Fall" Conjugation.

Vowel Succession: $\begin{smallmatrix} \bar{a} \\ \bar{æ} \end{smallmatrix} \left. \vphantom{\begin{smallmatrix} \bar{a} \\ \bar{æ} \end{smallmatrix}} \right\}, \bar{e}, \bar{e}, \begin{smallmatrix} \bar{a} \\ \bar{æ} \end{smallmatrix} \left. \vphantom{\begin{smallmatrix} \bar{a} \\ \bar{æ} \end{smallmatrix}} \right\}; \text{ or } \begin{smallmatrix} ea \\ \bar{e}a \\ \bar{o} \end{smallmatrix} \left. \vphantom{\begin{smallmatrix} ea \\ \bar{e}a \\ \bar{o} \end{smallmatrix}} \right\}, \bar{eo}, \bar{eo}, \begin{smallmatrix} ea \\ \bar{e}a \\ \bar{o} \end{smallmatrix} \left. \vphantom{\begin{smallmatrix} ea \\ \bar{e}a \\ \bar{o} \end{smallmatrix}} \right\}.$

- | | | | | | |
|-----|-------------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------------|---|
| (1) | <i>hāt-an</i> , | <i>hēt</i> , | <i>hēt-on</i> , | <i>gehāt-en</i> , | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{to call, name,} \\ \textit{command.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| | <i>lāet-an</i> , | <i>lēt</i> , | <i>lēt-on</i> , | <i>gelāet-en</i> , | <i>to let.</i> |
| (2) | <i>feall-an</i> , | <i>fēoll</i> , | <i>fēoll-on</i> , | <i>gefeall-en</i> , | <i>to fall.</i> |
| | <i>heald-an</i> , | <i>hēold</i> , | <i>hēold-on</i> , | <i>geheald-en</i> , | <i>to hold.</i> |
| | <i>hēaw-an</i> , | <i>hēow</i> , | <i>hēow-on</i> , | <i>gehēaw-en</i> , | <i>to hew.</i> |
| | <i>grōw-an</i> , | <i>grēow</i> , | <i>grēow-on</i> , | <i>gegrōw-en</i> , | <i>to grow.</i> |

NOTE 1. — This class consists of the Reduplicating Verbs; that is, those verbs that originally formed their preterits not by internal vowel change (ablaut), but by prefixing to the present stem the initial consonant + *e* (cf. Gk. λέ-λοιπα and Lat. *dē-di*). Contraction then took place between the syllabic prefix and the root, the fusion resulting in *ē* or *ēo*: **he-hat* > *heht* > *hēt*.

NOTE 2. — A peculiar interest attaches to *hātan*: the forms *hätte* and *hātton* are the sole remains in O.E. of the original Germanic passive. They are used both as presents and as preterits: *hätte* = *I am* or *was called*, *he is* or *was called*. No other verb in O.E. could have a passive sense without calling in the aid of the verb *to be* (§ 141).

tō rīce fōn, to come to the throne. ¹	sē weall, wall, rampart.
ðæt wæl [Val-halla] } slaughter,	ðæt wildor, wild beast, reindeer.
sē wælsliht, } carnage.	sē wīngeard, vineyard.

ābreca², ābræc, ābræcon, ābrocen, to break down.
 cweðan, cwæð, cwædon, gecweden, to say [quoth].
 gesēon, geseah, gesāwon, gesewen, to see.
 grōwan, grēow, grēowon, gegrōwen, to grow.
 ofslēan, ofslōh, ofslōgon, ofslægen, to slay.
 spreca², spræc, spræcon, gesprecen, to speak.
 stelan, stæl, stælon, gestolen, to steal.
 stōndan, stōð, stōdon, gestōnden, to stand.
 weaxan, wēox, wēoxon, geweaxen, to grow, increase [wax].

121.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Æfter ðæm sōðlice (indeed) ealle mæn spræcon āne (one) spræce. 2. Qnd hē cwæð: "Dis is ān folc, qnd ealle hīe sprecað āne spræce." 3. On sumum stōwum wīngeardas grōwað. 4. Hē hēt ðā nēdran ofslēan. 5. Ðā Engle ābræcon ðone lōngan weall, qnd sige nōmon. 6. Qnd ðæt sæd grēow qnd wēox. 7. Ic ne geseah ðone mōn sē ðe ðæs cnapan adesan stæl. 8. Hē wæs swyðe spēdig man on ðæm æhtum ðe hīera spēda on³ bēoð, ðæt is, on wildrum. 9. Qnd ðær wearð (was) micel wælsliht on gehwæðre hōnd. 10. Qnd æfter ðissum gefeohte, cōm Ælfred cyning mid his fierde, qnd gefeaht wið ealne ðone hēre, qnd sige nōm. 11. Ðeos burg hātte⁴ Æscedūn (Ashdown). 12. Ðære cwēne lic læg on ðæm hūse. 13. Qnd sē dæl ðe ðær aweg cōm wæs swyðe lýtēl. 14. Qnd ðæs ðrēotīene dagas Æðered tō rīce fēng.

II. 1. The men stood in the ships and fought against the Danes. 2. Before the thanes came, the king rode away.

¹ Literally, to take to (the) kingdom. Cf. "Have you anything to take to?" (*Two Gentlemen of Verona*, IV, 1, 42).

² **Breca**n belongs properly in Class V, but it has been drawn into Class IV possibly through the influence of the *r* in the root.

³ See § 94, (5).

⁴ See § 117, Note 2.

3. They said (**sædon**) that all the men spoke one language.
 4. They bore the queen's body to Wilton. 5. Alfred gave many gifts to his army (dat. without **tō**) before he went away.
 6. These men are called earls. 7. God sees all things.
 8. The boy held the reindeer with (**mid**) his hands.
 9. About six months afterwards, Alfred gained the victory, and came to the throne. 10. He said that there was very great slaughter on both sides.



CHAPTER XXI.

WEAK VERBS (§ 18).

122. The verbs belonging to the Weak Conjugation are generally of more recent origin than the strong verbs, being frequently formed from the roots of strong verbs. The Weak Conjugation was the growing conjugation in O.E. as it is in Mn.E. We instinctively put our newly coined or borrowed words into this conjugation (*telegraphed*, *boycotted*); and children, by the analogy of weak verbs, say *runned* for *ran*, *seed* for *saw*, *teared* for *tore*, *drawed* for *drew*, and *growed* for *grew*. So, for example, when Latin *dictāre* and *breviāre* came into O.E., they came as weak verbs, **dihtian** and **brēfian**.

The Three Classes of Weak Verbs.

123. There is no difficulty in telling, from the infinitive alone, to which of the three classes a weak verb belongs. Class III has been so invaded by Class II

that but three important verbs remain to it : **habban**, *to have*; **libban**, *to live*; and **sęcgan**, *to say*. Distinction is to be made, therefore, only between Classes II and I. Class II contains the verbs with infinitive in **-ian** not preceded by **r**. Class I contains the remaining weak verbs; that is, those with infinitive in **-r-ian** and those with infinitive in **-an** (not **-ian**).

Class I.

124. The preterit singular and past participle of Class I end in **-ede** and **-ed**, or **-de** and **-ed** respectively.

NOTE. — The infinitives of this class ended originally in **-jan** (= **-ian**). This accounts for the prevalence of i-umlaut in these verbs, and also for the large number of short-voweled stems ending in a double consonant (§ 115, Note 2). The weak verb is frequently the causative of the corresponding strong verb. In such cases, the root of the weak verb corresponds in form to the preterit singular of the strong verb: Mn.E. *drench* (= *to make drink*), *lay* (= *to make lie*), *rear* (= *to make rise*), and *set* (= *to make sit*), are the umlauted forms of **drȳnc** (preterit singular of **drīncan**), **læg** (preterit singular of **licgan**), **rās** (preterit singular of **rīsan**), and **sæt** (preterit singular of **sittan**).

Preterit and Past Participle in **-ede** and **-ed**.

125. Verbs with infinitive in **-an** preceded by **ri-** or the double consonants **mm**, **nn**, **ss**, **bb**, **cg** (= **gg**), add **-ede** for the preterit, and **-ed** for the past participle, the double consonant being always made single :

ri :	nęri-an,	nęr-ede,	genęr-ed,	<i>to save.</i>
mm :	fręmm-an,	fręm-ede,	gefřęm-ed,	<i>to perform [frame].</i>
nn :	ōęnn-an,	ōęn-ede,	geōęn-ed,	<i>to extend.</i>
ss :	cnyss-an,	cnys-ede,	gecnys-ed,	<i>to beat.</i>

bb: swēbb-an, swēf-ede, geswēf-ed, *to put to sleep.*

cg: węcg-an, węg-ede, gewęg-ed, *to agitate.*

NOTE.—**Lęgan**, *to lay*, is the only one of these verbs that syncope the *e*: lęgan, lęgde (lēde), gełęgd (gelēd), instead of lęgede, gełęged.

Preterit and Past Participle in *-de* and *-ed*.

126. All the other verbs belonging to Class I. add *-de* for the preterit and *-ed* for the past participle. This division includes, therefore, all stems long by nature (§ 10, (3), (a)):

dæl-an,	dæl-de,	gedæl-ed,	<i>to deal out, divide</i> [dæl].
dēm-an,	dēm-de,	gedēm-ed,	<i>to judge</i> [dōm].
grēt-an,	grēt-te,	gegrēt-ed,	<i>to greet.</i>
hīer-an,	hīer-de,	gehīer-ed,	<i>to hear.</i>
læd-an,	læd-de,	gelæd-ed,	<i>to lead.</i>

NOTE 1.—A preceding voiceless consonant (§ 9, Note) changes *-de* into *-te*: *grēt-de > grēt-te; *mēt-de > mēt-te; *īec-de > īec-te. Syncope and contraction are also frequent in the participles: gegrēt-ed > *gegrēt-d > gegrēt(t); gelæd-ed > gelæd(d).

NOTE 2.—**Būan**, *to dwell, cultivate*, has an admixture of strong forms in the past participle: būan, būde, gebūd (bȳn, gebūn). The present participle survives in Mn.E. *husband* = *house-dweller*.

127. It includes, also, all stems long by position (§ 10, (3), (b)) except those in *mm*, *nn*, *ss*, *bb*, and *cg* (§ 125):

sęnd-an,	sęnd-e,	gesęnd-ed,	<i>to send.</i>
sęt-an,	sęt-te,	gesęt-ed,	<i>to set</i> [sittan].
sigl-an,	sigl-de,	gesigl-ed,	<i>to sail.</i>
spęnd-an,	spęnd-e,	gespęnd-ed,	<i>to spend.</i>
trędd-an,	tręd-de,	getręd-ed,	<i>to tread.</i>

NOTE.—The participles frequently undergo syncope and contraction: gesęnded > gesęnd; gesęted > gesęt(t); gespęnded > gespęnd; getręded > getręd(d).

Irregular Verbs of Class I.

128. There are about twenty verbs belonging to Class I that are irregular in having no umlaut in the preterit and past participle. The preterit ends in *-de*, the past participle in *-a*; but, through the influence of a preceding voiceless consonant (§ 9, Note), *-ed* is generally unvoiced to *-te*, and *-a* to *-t*. The most important of these verbs are as follows:

bring-an,	brōh-te,	gebrōh-t,	<i>to bring.</i>
byc-gan,	boh-te,	geboh-t,	<i>to buy.</i>
sēc-an,	sōh-te,	gesōh-t,	<i>to seek.</i>
sēll-an,	seal-de,	geseal-d,	<i>to give, sell</i> [hand-sel].
tæc-an,	tæh-te,	getæh-t,	<i>to teach.</i>
tell-an,	teal-de,	geteal-d,	<i>to count</i> [tell].
ðenc-an,	ðōh-te,	geðōh-t,	<i>to think.</i>
ðync-an,	ðūh-te,	geðūh-t,	<i>to seem</i> [methinks].
wyrc-an,	worh-te,	geworh-t,	<i>to work.</i>

NOTE. — Such of these verbs as have stems in *c* or *g* are frequently written with an inserted *e*: *bycgean*, *sēcean*, *tæcean*, etc. This *e* indicates that *c* and *g* have palatal value; that is, are to be followed with a vanishing *y*-sound. In such cases, O.E. *c* usually passes into Mn.E. *ch*: *tæc(e)an* > *to teach*; *ræc(e)an* > *to reach*; *strecc(e)an* > *to stretch*. *Sēc(e)an* gives *besech* as well as *seek*. See § 8.

Conjugation of Class I.

129. Paradigms of *nerian*, *to save*; *frēmman*, *to perform*; *dælan*, *to divide*:

Indicative.

PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i>	1.	<i>Ic nerie</i>		<i>frēmme</i>		<i>dæle</i>
	2.	<i>ðū nērest</i>		<i>frēmest</i>		<i>dælst</i>
	3.	<i>hē nēreð</i>		<i>frēmeð</i>		<i>dælð</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1.	<i>wē</i>	} <i>neriað</i>		} <i>frēmmað</i>	} <i>dælað</i>
	2.	<i>gē</i>				
	3.	<i>hīe</i>				

PRETERIT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic	nērede	frēmede	dāelde
2.	ðū	nēredest	frēmedest	dāeldest
3.	hē	nērede	frēmede	dāelde
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	nēredon	frēmedon	dāeldon
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			

Subjunctive.**PRESENT.**

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic	nērie	frēmme	dāele
2.	ðū			
3.	hē			
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	nērien	frēmmen	dāelen
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			

PRETERIT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic	nērede	frēmede	dāelde
2.	ðū			
3.	hē			
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	nēreden	frēmeden	dāelden
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			

Imperative.

<i>Sing.</i> 2.	nēre	frēme	dāel
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	nērian	frēmman	dāelan
2.	nēriað	frēmmað	dāelað

Infinitive.

nērian	frēmman	dāelan
--------	---------	--------

Gerund.

tō nērianne (-enne)	tō frēmmanne (-enne)	tō dāelanne (-enne)
---------------------	----------------------	---------------------

Present Participle.

nēriende	frēmmente	dāelende
----------	-----------	----------

Past Participle.

genēred	gefremed	gedāeled
---------	----------	----------

NOTE. — The endings of the preterit present no difficulties; in the 2d and 3d singular present, however, the student will observe (a) that double consonants in the stem are made single: *fr̥emest*, *fr̥emeð* (not **fr̥emmet*, **fr̥emmeð*); *ð̥enest*, *ð̥eneð*; *se̥test* (*se̥tst*), *se̥teð* (*se̥tt*); *fylst*, *fylð*, from *fyllan*, *to fill*; (b) that syncope is the rule in stems long by nature: *d̥ǣlst* (< *d̥ǣlest*), *d̥ǣlð* (< *d̥ǣleð*); *d̥ēmst* (< *d̥ēmest*), *d̥ēmð* (< *d̥ēmeð*); *h̥ierst* (< *h̥ierest*), *h̥ierð* (< *h̥iereð*). Double consonants are also made single in the imperative 2d singular and in the past participle. Stems long by nature take no final -e in the imperative: *d̥ǣl*, *h̥ier*, *d̥ēm*.

Class II.

130. The infinitive of verbs belonging to this class ends in -ian (not -r-ian), the preterit singular in -ode, the past participle in -od. The preterit plural usually has -edon, however, instead of -odon:

<i>eard-ian</i>	<i>eard-ode</i> ,	<i>geeard-od</i> ,	<i>to dwell</i> [<i>eorðe</i>].
<i>luf-ian</i> ,	<i>luf-ode</i> ,	<i>geluf-od</i> ,	<i>to love</i> [<i>lufu</i>].
<i>rīcs-ian</i> ,	<i>rīcs-ode</i> ,	<i>gerīcs-od</i> ,	<i>to rule</i> [<i>rīce</i>].
<i>sealf-ian</i> ,	<i>sealf-ode</i> ,	<i>gesealf-od</i> ,	<i>to anoint</i> [<i>salve</i>].
<i>segl-ian</i> ,	<i>segl-ode</i> ,	<i>gesegl-od</i> ,	<i>to sail</i> [<i>segel</i>].

NOTE. — These verbs have no trace of original umlaut, since their -ian was once -ōjan. Hence, the vowel of the stem was shielded from the influence of the j (= i) by the interposition of ð.

Conjugation of Class II.

131. Paradigm of *lufian*, *to love* :

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	<i>Ic lufie</i>	<i>Sing.</i> 1.	<i>Ic</i> } <i>lufie</i>
2.	<i>ðū lufast</i>	2.	<i>ðū</i> }
3.	<i>hē lufað</i>	3.	<i>hē</i> }
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	<i>wē</i> } <i>lufiað</i>	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	<i>wē</i> } <i>lufien</i>
2.	<i>gē</i> }	2.	<i>gē</i> }
3.	<i>hīe</i> }	3.	<i>hīe</i> }

PRETERIT.		PRETERIT.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic lufode	<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic
2.	ðū lufodeſt	2.	ðū
3.	hē lufode	3.	hē
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē
2.	gē	2.	gē
3.	hīe	3.	hīe

Imperative.	Infinitive.	Present Participle.
<i>Sing.</i> 2.	lufian	lufiende
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	lufian	
2.	lufiað	
	Gerund.	Past Participle.
	tō lufianne (-enne)	gelufod

NOTE. 1.—The **-ie** (**-ien**) occurring in the present must be pronounced as a dissyllable. The **y**-sound thus interposed between the **i** and **e** is frequently indicated by the letter **g**: **lufie**, or **lufige**; **lufien**, or **lufigen**. So also for **ia**: **lufiað**, or **lufigað**; **lufian**, or **lufig(e)an**.

NOTE 2.—In the preterit singular, **-ade**, **-ude**, and **-ede** are not infrequent for **-ode**.

Class III.

132. The few verbs belonging here show a blending of Classes I and II. Like certain verbs of Class I (§ 128), the preterit and past participle are formed by adding **-de** and **-d**; like Class II, the 2d and 3d present indicative singular end in **-ast** and **-að**, the imperative 2d singular in **-a**:

habb-an,	hæf-de	gehæf-d,	to have.
libb-an,	lif-de	gelif-d,	to live.
sęcg-an	sęd-e (sæg-de),	gesęd (gesæg-d),	to say.

Conjugation of Class III.

133. Paradigms of **habban**, *to have*; **libban**, *to live*; **sęcgan**, *to say*.

Indicative.

PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic hæbbe	libbe	sęcge
2.	þū hæfst (hafast)	lifast	sęgst (sagast)
3.	hē hæfð (hafað)	lifað	sęgð (sagað)
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē		
2.	gē	habbað	libbað
3.	hīe		sęcgað

PRETERIT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic hæfde	lifde	sæde
2.	þū hæfdest	lifdest	sædest
3.	hē hæfde	lifde	sæde
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē		
2.	gē	hæfdon	lifdon
3.	hīe		sædon

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic		
2.	þū	hæbbe	libbe
3.	hē		
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē		
2.	gē	hæbben	libben
3.	hīe		sęcgen

PRETERIT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic		
2.	þū	hæfde	lifde
3.	hē		sæde
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē		
2.	gē	hæfden	lifden
3.	hīe		sæden

Imperative.

<i>Sing.</i> 2.	hafa	lifa	saga
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	habban	libban	sęcgan
2.	habbað	libbað	sęcgað

Infinitive.

habban

libban

sęcgan

Gerund.

tō habbane (-enne)

tō libbane (-enne)

tō sęgganne (-enne)

Present Participle.

hæbbende

libbende

sęgende

Past Participle.

gehæfd

gelifd

gesæd



CHAPTER XXII.

REMAINING VERBS; VERB-PHRASES WITH **habban**,
bēon, AND **weorðan**.

Anomalous Verbs. (See § 19.)

134. These are:

bēon (<i>wesan</i>),	wæs ,	wæron ,	—,	<i>to be.</i>
willan ,	wolde ,	woldon ,	—,	<i>to will, intend.</i>
dōn ,	dyde ,	dydon ,	gedōn ,	<i>to do, cause.</i>
gān ,	ēode ,	ēodon ,	gegān ,	<i>to go.</i>

NOTE. — In the original Indo-Germanic language, the first person of the present indicative singular ended in (1) **ō** or (2) **mi**. Cf. Gk. *λύ-ω*, *ει-μι*, Lat. *am-ō*, *su-m*. The Strong and Weak Conjugations of O.E. are survivals of the **ō**-class. The four Anomalous Verbs mentioned above are the sole remains in O.E. of the **mi**-class. Note the surviving **m** in **eom** *I am*, and **dōm** *I do* (Northumbrian form). These **mi**-verbs are sometimes called non-Thematic to distinguish them from the Thematic or **ō**-verbs.

Conjugation of Anomalous Verbs.

135. Only the present indicative and subjunctive are at all irregular:

Indicative.

PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic eom (bēom)	wille	dō	gā
2.	Ńū eart (bist)	wilt	dēst	gāest
3.	hē is (bið)	wille	dēð	gāeð
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	sind(on) willað	dōð	gāð
2.	gē			
3.	hīe			

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ic	sīe	wille	dō	gā
2.	Ńū				
3.	hē				
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	wē	sīen	willen	dōn	gān
2.	gē				
3.	hīe				

NOTE. — The preterit subjunctive of **bēon** is formed, of course, not from **wæs**, but from **wāeron**. See § 103, (3).

Preterit-Present Verbs. (See § 19.)

136. These verbs are called Preterit-Present because the present tense (indicative and subjunctive) of each of them is, in form, a strong preterit, the old present having been displaced by the new. They all have weak preterits. Most of the Mn.E. Auxiliary Verbs belong to this class.

witan,	{ wiste, wisse, }	wiston,	gewiten,	to know [to wit, wot].
āgan,	āhte,	āhton,	āgen (adj.),	to possess [owe].
cunnan,	cūðe,	cūðon,	{ gecunnen, cūð (adj.), }	to know, can [uncouth, cunning].

durran,	dorste,	dorston,	—	<i>to dare.</i>
sculan,	sceolde,	sceoldon,	—	<i>shall.</i>
magan,	{ meahte, mihte,	{ meahton, mihton,	—	<i>to be able, may.</i>
mōtan,				
	mōste,	mōston,	—	<i>may, must.</i>

NOTE. — The change in meaning from preterit to present, with retention of the preterit form, is not uncommon in other languages. Several examples are found in Latin and Greek (cf. *nōvi* and *oīda*, *I know*). Mn.E. has gone further still: **āhte** and **mōste**, which had already suffered the loss of their old preterits (**āh**, **mōt**), have been forced back again into the present (*ought*, *must*). Having exhausted, therefore, the only means of preterit formation known to Germanic, the strong and the weak, it is not likely that either *ought* or *must* will ever develop distinct preterit forms.

Conjugation of Preterit-Present Verbs.

137. The irregularities occur in the present indicative and subjunctive :

Indicative.

PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic wāt	āh	cƿn (can)	dear	sceal	mæg	mōt
2. ƿū wāst	āhst	cƿnst (canst)	dearst	scealt	meaht	mōst
3. hē wāt	āh	cƿn (can)	dear	sceal	mæg	mōt
<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē	} witon	āƿon	cunnon	durren	sculen	māƿon
2. gē						
3. hie						

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ic	} wite	āƿe	cunne	durre	scule (scyle)	māƿe	mōte
2. ƿū							
3. hē							
<i>Plur.</i> 1. wē	} witen	āƿen	cunnen	durren	sculen (scylen)	māƿen	mōten
2. gē							
3. hie							

NOTE 1. — **Willan** and **sculan** do not often connote simple futurity in Early West Saxon, yet they were fast drifting that way.

The Mn.E. use of *shall* only with the 1st person and *will* only with the 2d and 3d, to express simple futurity, was wholly unknown even in Shakespeare's day. The elaborate distinctions drawn between these words by modern grammarians are not only cumbersome and foreign to the genius of English, but equally lacking in psychological basis.

NOTE 2. — **Sculan** originally implied the idea of (1) *duty*, or *compulsion* (= *ought to*, or *must*), and this conception lurks with more or less prominence in almost every function of **sculan** in O.E. . **Dryhten bebēad Moyse hū hē sceolde beran ðā earce**, *The Lord instructed Moses how he ought to bear the ark*; **Ælc mann sceal be his andgietes mæðe . . . sprecaþ ðæt he spricð, and dōn ðæt ðæt hē dēð**, *Every man must, according to the measure of his intelligence, speak what he speaks, and do what he does*. Its next most frequent use is to express (2) *custom*, the transition from the obligatory to the customary being an easy one: **Sē byrdesta sceall gyldan fiftýne mearðes fell**, *The man of highest rank pays fifteen marten skins*.

NOTE 3. — **Willan** expressed originally (1) *pure volition*, and this is its most frequent use in O.E. It may occur without the infinitive: **Nylle ic ðæs synfullan dēað, ac ic wille ðæt hē gecyrre and lybbe**, *I do not desire the sinner's death, but I desire that he return and live*. The wish being father to the intention, **willan** soon came to express (2) *purpose*: **Hē sæde ðæt hē at sumum cirre wolde fandan hū longe ðæt land norðryhte læge**, *He said that he intended, at some time, to investigate how far that land extended northward*.

Verb-Phrases with *habban*, *bēon* (*wesan*), and *weorðan*.

Verb-Phrases in the Active Voice.

138. The present and preterit of **habban**, combined with a past participle, are used in O.E., as in Mn.E., to form the present perfect and past perfect tenses:

PRESENT PERFECT.

- Sing.* 1. Ic hæbbe gedrifen
2. ðū hæfst gedrifen
3. hē hæfð gedrifen

PAST PERFECT.

- Sing.* 1. Ic hæfde gedrifen
2. ðū hæfdest gedrifen
3. hē hæfde gedrifen

PRESENT PERFECT.		PAST PERFECT.	
Plur. 1. wē	} habbað gedrifen	Plur. 1. wē	} hæfdon gedrifen
2. gē		2. gē	
3. hie		3. hie	

The past participle is not usually inflected to agree with the direct object : **Norðymbre** **qnd** **Ēastengle** **hæfdon** **Ælfrede** **cyninge** **āðas** **geseald** (not *gesealde*, § 82), *The Northumbrians and East Anglians had given king Alfred oaths*; **qnd** **hæfdon** **miclne** **dæl** **ðāra** **horsa** **freten** (not *fretenne*), and (they) *had devoured a large part of the horses*.

NOTE. — Many sentences might be quoted in which the participle does agree with the direct object, but there seems to be no clear line of demarcation between them and the sentences just cited. Originally, the participle expressed a *resultant state*, and belonged in sense more to the object than to **habban**; but in Early West Saxon **habban** had already, in the majority of cases, become a pure auxiliary when used with the past participle. This is conclusively proved by the use of **habban** with intransitive verbs. In such a clause, therefore, as **oððæt** **hie** **hine** **ofslægenne** **hæfdon**, there is no occasion to translate *until they had him slain* (= *resultant state*); the agreement here is more probably due to the proximity of **ofslægenne** to **hine**. So also **ac** **hī** **hæfdon** **pā** **hiera** **stemn** **gesetenne**, *but they had already served out* (*sat out*) *their military term*.

139. If the verb is intransitive, and denotes a *change of condition*, a *departure or arrival*, **bēon** (**wesan**) usually replaces **habban**. The past participle, in such cases, partakes of the nature of an adjective, and generally agrees with the subject: **Mīne** **welan** **pe** **ic** **io** **hæfde** **syndon** **ealle** **gewitene** **qnd** **gedrorene**, *My possessions which I once had are all departed and fallen away*; **wæron** **pā** **mēn** **uppe** **on** **lōnde** **of** **āgāne**, *the men had gone up ashore*; **qnd** **pā** **ōpre** **wæron** **hungre** **ācwolen**, and the

others had perished of hunger; and ēac sē micla hēre wæs þā þær tō cumen, and also the large army had then arrived there.

140. A progressive present and preterit (not always, however, with distinctively progressive meanings) are formed by combining a present participle with the present and preterit of *bēon* (*wesan*). The participle remains uninflected: *and hīe alle on ðone cyning wærun feohtende, and they all were fighting against the king; Symle hē bið lōciende, nē slæpð hē nāfre, He is always looking, nor does He ever sleep.*

NOTE. — In most sentences of this sort, the subject is masculine (singular or plural); hence no inference can be made as to agreement, since *-e* is the participial ending for both numbers of the nominative masculine (§ 82). By analogy, therefore, the other genders usually conform in inflection to the masculine: *wæron þā ealle þā dēoflu clypigende ānre stefne, then were all the devils crying with one voice.*

Verb-Phrases in the Passive Voice.

141. Passive constructions are formed by combining *bēon* (*wesan*) or *weorðan* with a past participle. The participle agrees regularly with the subject: *hīe wæron benumene ægðer ge þæs cēapes ge þæs cornes, they were deprived both of the cattle and the corn; hī bēoð āblende mid ðām pīostrum heora scylda, they are blinded with the darkness of their sins; and sē wæhrēowa Domiciānus on ðām ylcan gēare wearð ācweald, and the murderous Domitian was killed in the same year; and Æpelwulf aldormen wearð ofslægen, and Æthelwulf, alderman, was slain.*

NOTE 1. — To express agency, Mn.E. employs *by*, rarely *of*; M.E. *of*, rarely *by*; O.E. *frōm* (*fram*), rarely *of*: *Sē ðe Godes bebodu*

ne gecnāwōð, ne bið hē oncnāwen frōm Gode, *He who does not recognize God's commands, will not be recognized by God*; **Betwux þāem wearð ofslagen Ēadwine . . . fram Brytta cyninge**, *Meanwhile, Edwin was slain by the king of the Britons*.

NOTE 2. — O.E. had no progressive forms for the passive, and could not, therefore, distinguish between *He is being wounded* and *He is wounded*. It was not until more than a hundred years after Shakespeare's death that *being* assumed this function. **Weorðan**, which originally denoted *a passage from one state to another*, was ultimately driven out by **bēon** (**wesan**), and survives now only in *Woe worth* (= *be to*).

142.

VOCABULARY.

ðā Beormas, *Permians*.

ðā Dēniscan, *the Danish (men), Danes*.

ðā Finnas, *Fins*.

ðæt gewald, *control [wealdan]*.

sēo sē, *sea*.

sēo scīr, *shire, district*.

sēo wælstōw, *battle-field*.

āgan wælstōwe gewald, *to maintain possession of the battle-field*.

sē wealdend, *ruler, wielder*.

geflieman, gefliemde, gefliemed, *to put to flight*.

gestaðelian, gestaðelode, gestaðelod, *to establish, restore*.

gewissian, gewissode, gewissod, *to guide, direct*.

wīcian, wīcode, gewīcod, *to dwell [wīc = village]*.

143.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Qnd ðær wæs micel wæl geslāgen on gehwæpre hōnd, qnd Æpelwulf ealdormōn wearþ ofslāgen; qnd þā Dēniscan āhton wælstōwe gewald. 2. Qnd þæs ymb āne mōnā gefeaht Ælfred cyning wip ealne þone hēre, ond hine gefliemde. 3. Hē sāde þeah þæt þæt land sīe swīpe lang norþ þōnan. 4. Þā Beormas hæfdon swīpe wel gebūð (§ 126, Note 2) hiera land. 5. Ohthere sāde þæt sēo scīr hātte (§ 117, Note 2) Hālgoland, þe hē on (§ 94, (5)) būde. 6. þā Finnas wīcedon be þære sē. 7. Dryhten, ælmihtiga (§ 78, Note) God, Wyrhta and Wealdend ealra gesceafta, ic bidde

ðe for ðīnre miclan mildheortnesse ðæt ðū mē gewissie tō ðīnum willan; and gestaðela mīn mōd tō ðīnum willan and tō mīnre sǣwle ðearfe. 8. þā sceolde hē ðær bīdan ryhtnorþanwindes, for ðām þæt land bēag þær sūðryhte, oppe sēo sē in on ðæt land, hē nysse hwæðer. 9. For ðȳ, mē ðyncð bētre, gif ēow swā ðyncð, ðæt wē ēac ðās bēc on ðæt geðēode wēnden ðe wē ealle gecnāwan mægen.

II. 1. When the king heard that, he went (= then went he) westward with his army to Ashdown. 2. Lovest thou me more than these? 3. The men said that the shire which they lived in was called Halgoland. 4. All things were made (**wyrca**n) by God. 5. They were fighting for two days with (= against) the Danes. 6. King Alfred fought with the Danes, and gained the victory; but the Danes retained possession of the battle-field. 7. These men dwelt in England before they came hither. 8. I have not seen the book of (**ymbe**) which you speak (**spreca**n).

PART III.

SELECTIONS FOR READING.

PROSE.

INTRODUCTORY.

I. The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle.

THIS famous work, a series of progressive annals by unknown hands, embraces a period extending from Cæsar's invasion of England to 1154. It is not known when or where these annals began to be recorded in English.

"The annals from the year 866 — that of Ethelred's ascent of the throne — to the year 887 seem to be the work of one mind. Not a single year is passed over, and to several is granted considerable space, especially to the years 871, 878, and 885. The whole has gained a certain roundness and fulness, because the events — nearly all of them episodes in the ever-recurring conflict with the Danes — are taken in their connection, and the thread dropped in one year is resumed in the next. Not only is the style in itself concise; it has a sort of nervous severity and pithy rigor. The construction is often antiquated, and suggests at times the freedom of poetry; though this purely historical prose is far removed from poetry in profusion of language." (Ten Brink, *Early Eng. Lit.*, I.)

II. The Translations of Alfred.

Alfred's reign (871–901) may be divided into four periods. The *first*, the period of Danish invasion, extends from 871 to

881; the *second*, the period of comparative quiet, from 881 to 893; the *third*, the period of renewed strife (beginning with the incursions of Hasting), from 893 to 897; the *fourth*, the period of peace, from 897 to 901. His literary work probably falls in the second period.*

The works translated by Alfred from Latin into the vernacular were (1) *Consolation of Philosophy* (*De Consolatione Philosophiae*) by Boëthius (475–525), (2) *Compendious History of the World* (*Historiarum Libri VII*) by Orosius (c. 418), (3) *Ecclesiastical History of the English* (*Historia Ecclesiastica Anglorum*) by Bede (672–735), and (4) *Pastoral Care* (*De Cura Pastoralis*) by Pope Gregory the Great (540–604).

The chronological sequence of these works is wholly unknown. That given is supported by Turner, Arend, Morley, Grein, and Pauli. Wülker argues for an exact reversal of this order. According to Ten Brink, the order was more probably (1) *Orosius*, (2) *Bede*, (3) *Boëthius*, and (4) *Pastoral Care*. The most recent contribution to the subject is from Wülfing, who contends for (1) *Bede*, (2) *Orosius*, (3) *Pastoral Care*, and (4) *Boëthius*.

I. THE BATTLE OF ASHDOWN.

[From the *Chronicle*, Parker MS. The event and date are significant. The Danes had for the first time invaded Wessex. Alfred's older brother, Ethelred, was king; but to Alfred belongs the glory of the victory at Ashdown (Berkshire). Asser (*Life of Alfred*) tells us that for a long time Ethelred remained praying in his tent, while Alfred and his followers went forth "like a wild hoar against the hounds."]

1 871. Hēr cuōm¹ sē hēre tō Rēadīngum on Westseaxe,
2 qnd pæs ymb iiii niht ridon ii eorlas ūp. pā gemētte hīe

* There is something inexpressibly touching in this clause from the great king's pen: gif wē ðā stīlnesse habbað. He is speaking of how much he hopes to do, by his translations, for the enlightenment of his people.

1 Æpelwulf aldorman² on Ænglafelda, qnd him þær wip ge-
 2 feaht, qnd sige nam. þæs ymb iiii niht Æpered cyning
 3 qnd Ælfred his brōpur³ þær micle fierd tō Rēadingum
 4 gelæddon, qnd wip þone hēre gefuhton; qnd þær wæs
 5 micel wæl geslægen on gehwæpre hōnd, qnd Æpelwulf
 6 aldormon wearþ ofslægen; qnd þā Dēniscan āhton wæl-
 7 stōwe gewald.

8 Qnd þæs ymb iiii niht gefeaht Æpered cyning qnd
 9 Ælfred his brōpur wip alne⁴ þone hēre on Æscesdūne.
 10 Qnd hīe wærun⁵ on twām gefylecum: on oþrum wæs
 11 Bāchseġg qnd Halfdene þā hāþnan cyningas, qnd on
 12 oþrum wæron þā eorlas. Qnd þā gefeaht sē cyning
 13 Æpered wip þāra cyninga getruman, qnd þær wearþ sē
 14 cyning Bāġseġg ofslægen; qnd Ælfred his brōpur wip
 15 þāra eorla getruman, qnd þær wearþ Sidroc eorl ofslægen
 16 sē alda,⁶ qnd Sidroc eorl sē gioncga,⁷ qnd Ōsbearn eorl,
 17 qnd Fræna eorl, qnd Hareld eorl; qnd þā hērgas⁸ bēgen
 18 gefliemde, qnd fela þūsenda ofslægenra, qnd onfeohrende
 19 wæron oþ niht.

20 Qnd þæs ymb xiiii niht gefeaht Æpered cyning qnd
 21 Ælfred his brōður wip þone hēre æt Basengum, qnd þær
 22 þā Dēniscan sige nāmon.

23 Qnd þæs ymb ii mōnaþ gefeaht Æpered cyning qnd
 24 Ælfred his brōpur wip þone hēre æt Mēretūne, qnd hīe
 25 wærun on tuām⁹ gefylecum, qnd hīe bûtū gefliemdon, qnd
 26 lōnge on dæg sige āhton; qnd þær wearþ micel wælsliht
 27 on gehwæpere hōnd; qnd þā Dēniscan āhton wælstōwe

8. **gefeaht.** Notice that the singular is used. This is the more common construction in O.E. when a compound subject, composed of singular members, follows its predicate. Cf. *For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory.* See also p. 107, note on **wæs.**

18. **qnd fela þūsenda ofslægenra,** and there were many thousands of slain (§ 91).

- 1 gewald; qnd þær wearp Hēahmund bisceop ofslāgen,
 2 qnd fela gōdra mōnna. Qnd æfter þissum gefeohte cuōm¹
 3 micel sumorlida.
 4 Qnd þæs ofer Ēastron gefōr Æþered cyning; qnd hē
 5 ricsode v gēar; qnd his lic līp æt Wīnburnan.
 6 þā fēng Ælfred Æpelwulfing his brōpur tō Wesseaxna
 7 rice. Qnd þæs ymb ānne mōnaþ gefeaht Ælfred cyning
 8 wip alne⁴ pone hēre lýtle werede¹⁰ æt Wiltūne, qnd hine
 9 lōnge on dæg gefliemde, qnd þā Dēniscan āhton wælstōwe
 10 gewald.
 11 Qnd þæs gēares wurdon viiii folcgefeoht gefohten wip
 12 pone hēre on þȳ cynerice be sūpan Tēmese, būtan þām þe
 13 him Ælfred þæs cyninges brōpur qnd ānlīpig aldormōn² qnd
 14 cyninges þegnas oft rāde onridon þe mōn nā ne rīmde;
 15 qnd þæs gēares wærun⁵ ofslāgene viiii eorlas qnd ān cyning.
 16 Qnd þȳ gēare nāmon Westseaxe friþ wip pone hēre.

CONSULT GLOSSARY AND PARADIGMS UNDER FORMS GIVEN BELOW.

No note is made of such variants as **y** (**ȳ**) or **i** (**ī**) for **ie** (**īe**). See Glossary under **ie** (**īe**); occurrences, also, of **and** for **qnd**, **land** for **lqnd**, are found on almost every page of Early West Saxon. Such words should be sought for under the more common forms, **qnd**, **lqnd**.

1 = cwōm.

4 = ealne.

8 = hēras.

2 = ealdormōn.

5 = wæron.

9 = twæm.

3 = brōþor.

6 = ealda.

10 = werode.

7 = geonga.

II. A PRAYER OF KING ALFRED.

[With this characteristic prayer, Alfred concludes his translation of Boethius's *Consolation of Philosophy*. Unfortunately, the only extant MS. (Bodleian 180) is Late West Saxon. I follow, therefore, Prof. A. S. Cook's normalization on an Early West Saxon basis. See Cook's *First Book in Old English*, p. 163.]

12. būtan þām þe, etc., *besides which, Alfred . . . made raids against them (him), which were not counted.* See § 70, Note.

1 Dryhten, ælmihtiga God, Wyrhta and Wealdend ealra
 2 gesceafta, ic bidde ðē for ðīnre miclan mildheortnesse,
 3 and for ðære hālgan rōde tǣcne, and for Sanctæ Marian
 4 mægðhāde, and for Sancti Michaeles gehīersumnesse, and
 5 for ealra ðīnra hālgena lufan and hiera earnungum, ðæt
 6 ðū mē gewissie bēṭ ðonne ic āworhte tō ðē; and gewissa
 7 mē tō ðīnum willan, and tō mīnre sǣwle ðearfe, bēṭ ðonne
 8 ic self cunne; and gestaðela mīn mōd tō ðīnum willan and
 9 tō mīnre sǣwle ðearfe; and gestranga mē wið ðæs dēofles
 10 costnungum; and āfierr fram mē ðā fūlan gālnesse and
 11 ælce unrihtwīsnesse; and gescield mē wið mīnum wiðer-
 12 winnum, gesewenlīcum and ungesewenlīcum; and tǣc mē
 13 ðīnne willan tō wyrceanne; ðæt ic mæge ðē inweardlīce
 14 lufian tōforan eallum ðingum, mid clānum geðance and
 15 mid clānum lichaman. For ðon ðe ðū eart mīn Scieppend,
 16 and mīn Ālīesend, mīn Fultum, mīn Frōfor, mīn Trēow-
 17 nes, and mīn Tōhopa. Sīe ðē lof and wuldor nū and
 18 ā ā ā, tō worulde būtan æghwīlcum ende. Amen.

III. THE VOYAGES OF OHTHERE AND WULFSTAN.

[Lauderdale and Cottonian MSS. These voyages are an original insertion by Alfred into his translation of Orosius's *Compendious History of the World*.

"They consist," says Ten Brink, "of a complete description of all the countries in which the Teutonic tongue prevailed at Alfred's time, and a full narrative of the travels of two voyagers, which the king wrote down from their own lips. One of these, a Norwegian named Ohthere, had quite

3-4. **Marian . . . Michaelles.** O.E. is inconsistent in the treatment of foreign names. They are sometimes naturalized, and sometimes retain in part their original inflections. **Marian**, an original accusative, is here used as a genitive; while **Michaelles** has the O.E. genitive ending.

17. **Sīe ðē lof.** See § 105, 1.

circumnavigated the coast of Scandinavia in his travels, and had even penetrated to the White Sea; the other, named Wulfstan, had sailed from Schleswig to Frische Haff. The geographical and ethnographical details of both accounts are exceedingly interesting, and their style is attractive, clear, and concrete."

Ohthere made two voyages. Sailing first northward along the western coast of Norway, he rounded the North Cape, passed into the White Sea, and entered the Dwina River (*ān micel ēa*). On his second voyage he sailed southward along the western coast of Norway, entered the Skager Rack (*wīdsæ*), passed through the Cattegat, and anchored at the Danish port of Haddeby (*æt Hæþum*), modern Schleswig.

Wulfstan sailed only in the Baltic Sea. His voyage of seven days from Schleswig brought him to Drauseu (*Trūsō*) on the shore of the Drausensee.]

Ohthere's First Voyage.

1 Ōhthere sǣde his hlāforde, ÆlfrEDE cyninge, þæt hē
2 ealra Norðmōnna norþmest būde. Hē cwæð þæt hē būde
3 on þāem lande norþweardum wip þā Westsæ. Hē sǣde
4 þēah þæt þæt land sīe swīpe lang norþ þōnan; ac hit is
5 eal wēste, būton on fēawum stōwum styccemælum wīcīað
6 Finnas, on huntoðe on wintra, qnd on sumera on fisceape
7 be þære sǣ. Hē sǣde þæt hē æt sumum cirre wolde
8 fandian hū longe þæt land norþryhte lǣge, oppe hwæðer
9 ænig mōn be norðan þāem wēstenne būde. þā fōr hē
10 norþryhte be þāem lande: lēt him ealne weg þæt wēste
11 land on ðæt stēorbord, qnd þā wīdsæ on ðæt bæcbord prīe
12 dagas. þā wæs hē swā feor norþ swā þā hwælhuntan
13 firrest faraþ. þā fōr hē þā gīet norþryhte swā feor swā
14 hē meahte on þāem oþrum prīm dagum gesiglan. þā bēag
15 þæt land þær ēastryhte, oppe sēo sǣ in on ðæt lond, hē
16 nysse hwæðer, būton hē wisse ðæt hē ðær bād westan-
17 windes qnd hwōn norþan, qnd siglde ðā east be lande
18 swā swā hē meahte on fēower dagum gesiglan. þā
19 sceolde hē ðær bīdan ryhtnorþanwindes, for ðām þæt
20 land bēag þær sūþryhte, oppe sēo sǣ in on ðæt land, hē
21 nysse hwæper. þā siglde hē þōnan sūðryhte be lande

1 swā swā hē mehte¹ on fif dāgum gesiglan. Dā læg þær
 2 ān micel ēa ūp in on þæt land. Þā cirdon hīe ūp in on
 3 ðā ēa, for þām hīe ne dorston forþ bi þære ēa siglan for
 4 unfriþe; for þām ðæt land wæs eall gebūn on ōpre healfe
 5 þære ēas. Ne mētte hē ær nān gebūn land, sippa hē
 6 frōm his āgnum hām fōr; ac him wæs ealne weg wēste
 7 land on þæt stēorbord, būtan fiscerum ond fugelerum ond
 8 huntum, ond þæt wæron eall Finnas; ond him wæs ā
 9 wīdsā on ðæt bæcbord. Þā Beormas hæfdon swīpe wel
 10 gebūd hira land: ac hīe ne dorston þær on cuman. Ac
 11 þāra Terfinna land wæs eal wēste, būton ðær huntan
 12 gewīcodon, oþþe fisceras, oþþe fugeleras.
 13 Fela spella him sādōn þā Beormas ægþer ge of hīera
 14 āgnum lande ge of þām landum þe ymb hīe ūtan wæron;
 15 ac hē nyste hwæt þæs sōpes wæs, for þām hē hit self ne
 16 geseah. Þā Finnas, him pūhte, ond þā Beormas sprācon
 17 nēah ān gepōde. Swīpost hē fōr ðider, tō ēacan þæs
 18 landes scēawunge, for þām horshwælum, for ðām hīe
 19 habbað swīpe æpele bān on hīora² tōpum—þā tēð hīe brōh-
 20 ton sume þām cyninge—ond hīora hȳd bið swīðe gōd tō
 21 scīprāpum. Sē hwæl bið micle lāssa þonne ōðre hwalas:
 22 ne bið hē lēngra ðonne syfan³ ȳlna lang; ac on his āgnum
 23 lande is sē bētsta hwælhuntað: þā bēoð eahta and fēo-
 24 wertiges ȳlna lange, and þā mēstan fiftiges ȳlna lange;
 25 þāra hē sāde þæt hē syxa sum ofslōge syxtig on twām
 26 dāgum.

6. **frōm his āgnum hām.** An adverbial dative singular without an inflectional ending is found with **hām**, **dæg**, **morgen**, and **æfen**.

8. **ond þæt wæron.** See § 40, Note 3.

15. **hwæt þæs sōpes wæs.** Sweet errs in explaining **sōpes** as attracted into the genitive by **þæs**. It is not a predicate adjective, but a partitive genitive after **hwæt**.

25. **syxa sum.** See § 91, Note 2.

1 Hē wæs swýðe spēdig man on þām æhtum þe heora²
2 spēda on bēoð, þæt is, on wil drum. Hē hæfde þā gýt, ðā
3 hē þone cyninge⁵ sōhte, tamra dēora unbebohra syx hund.
4 þā dēor hī hātað 'hrānas'; þāra wæron syx stælhrānas;
5 ðā bēoð swýðe dýre mid Finnum, for ðām hý fōð þā
6 wildan hrānas mid. Hē wæs mid þām fyrstum mannum
7 on þām lande: næfde hē þeah mā ðonne twēntig hryðera,
8 and twēntig scēapa, and twēntig swýna; and þæt lýtle
9 þæt hē ƿrede, hē ƿrede mid horsan.⁴ Ac hyra ār is mæst
10 on þām gafole þe ðā Finnas him gylðað. Þæt gafol bið
11 on dēora fellum, and on fugela feðerum, and hwales bāne,
12 and on þām sciprāpum þe bēoð of hwæles hýde geworht
13 and of sēoles. Æghwile gylt be hys gebyrdum. Sē byrd-
14 esta sceall gyldan fiftýne mearðes fell, and fíf hrānes,
15 and ān beren fel, and týn ambra feðra, and berenne kyr-
16 tel oððe yterenne, and twēgen sciprāpas; ægƿer sý syxtig
17 ƿlna lang, ƿer sý of hwæles hýde geworht, ƿer of sīoles.⁶
18 Hē sāde ðæt Norðmanna land wære swýpe lang and
19 swýðe smæl. Eal þæt his man āðer oððe ƿttan oððe ƿrian
20 mæg, þæt lið wið ðā sē; and þæt is þeah on sumum
21 stōwum swýðe clūdig; and liegað wilde mōras wið ēastan
22 and wið ūpp on emnlange þām býnum lande. On þām
23 mōrum eardiað Finnas. And þæt býne land is ēaste-
24 weard brādost, and symle swā norðor swā smælre. Ēaste-
25 weard⁷ hit mæg bion⁸ syxtig mīla brād, ƿpe hwēne brædre;
26 and middeweard prītig oððe brædre; and norðeweard hē
27 cwæð, þær hit smalost wære, þæt hit mihte bēon prēora
28 mīla brād tō þām mōre; and sē mōr syðþan,⁹ on sumum

2. on bēoð. See § 94, (5).

19. Eal þæt his man. Pronominal genitives are not always possessive in O.E.; **his** is here the partitive genitive of **hit**, the succeeding relative pronoun being omitted: *All that (portion) of it that may, either-of-the-two, either be grazed or plowed, etc.* (§ 70, Note).

1 stōwum, swā brād swā man mæg on twām wucum ofer-
 2 fēran; and on sumum stōwum swā brād swā man mæg
 3 on syx dagum oferfēran.
 4 Ðonne is tōemnes þām lande sūðewearðum, on ðore
 5 healfe þæs mōres, Swēoland, op þæt land norðewearð;
 6 and tōemnes þām lande norðewearðum, Cwēna land. þā
 7 Cwēnas hērgiað hwilum on ðā Norðmēn ofer ðone mōr,
 8 hwilum þā Norðmēn on hȳ. And þær sint swiðe micle
 9 mēras fersce geond þā mōras; and berað þā Cwēnas hyra
 10 scyðu ofer land on ðā mēras, and þanon hērgiað on ðā
 11 Norðmēn; hȳ habbað swȳðe lȳtle scyða and swȳðe
 12 leohte.

1 = meahte, mihte.

4 = horsum.

7 = -weard.

2 = hiera.

5 = cyning.

8 = bēon.

3 = seofon.

6 = sēoles.

9 = siððan.

Ohthere's Second Voyage.

13 Ōhthere sāde þæt sīo¹ scīr hātte Hālgoland, þe hē on
 14 būde. Hē cwæð þæt nān man ne būde be norðan him.
 15 Þonne is ān port on sūðewearðum þām lande, þone man
 16 hāt Sciringeshēal. pyder hē cwæð þæt man ne mihte
 17 geseglian on ānum mōnðe, gyf man on niht wīcode, and
 18 ælce dæge hæfde ambyrne wind; and ealle ðā hwile hē
 19 sceal seglian be lande. And on þæt stēorbord him bið
 20 ærest Īraland, and þonne ðā igland þe synd betux Īra-
 21 lande and pißum lande. Þonne is þis land, oð hē cymð
 22 tō Sciringeshēale, and ealne weg on þæt bæcbord Norð-

11-12. **scyða . . . leohte.** These words exhibit inflections more frequent in Late than in Early West Saxon. The normal forms would be **scyðu, leoht**; but in Late West Saxon the **-u** of short-stemmed neuters is generally replaced by **-a**; and the nominative accusative plural neuter of adjectives takes, by analogy, the masculine endings: **hwate, gōde, hālge**, instead of **hwatu, gōd, hālgu**.

1 weg. Wið sūðan pone Sciringeshēal fylð swyðe mycel
 2 sē ūp in on ðæt land; sēo is brādre þonne ænig man ofer
 3 sēon mæge. And is Gotland on ōðre healfe ongēan, and
 4 siððan Sillende. Sēo sē līð mænig² hund mīla ūp in on
 5 þæt land.
 6 And of Sciringeshēale hē cwæð ðæt hē seglode on fīf
 7 dagan³ tō þām porte þe mōn hāt æt Hǣpum; sē stent
 8 betuh Winedum, and Seaxum, and Angle, and hȳrð in
 9 on Dene. Ðā hē piderweard seglode fram Sciringes-
 10 hēale, þā wæs him on þæt bæcbord Denameare and on
 11 þæt stēorbord wīdsæ prȳ dagas; and þā, twēgen dagas ær
 12 hē tō Hǣpum cōme, him wæs on þæt stēorbord Gotland,
 13 and Sillende, and iglanda fela. On þām landum eardo-
 14 don Engle, ær hī hider on land cōman.⁴ And hym wæs
 15 ðā twēgen dagas on ðæt bæcbord þā igland þe in on
 16 Denemearce hȳrað.

¹ = sēo.

² = mōnig.

³ = dagum.

⁴ = cōmen.

Wulfstan's Voyage.

17 Wulfstān sǣde þæt hē gefōre of Hǣðum, þæt hē wære
 18 on Trūsō on syfan dagum and nihtum, þæt þæt scip wæs
 19 ealne weg yrnende under segle. Weonoðland him wæs

7. æt Hǣpum. "This pleonastic use of *æt* with names of places occurs elsewhere in the older writings, as in the Chronicle (552), 'in þære stōwe þe is genemned æt Searobyrg,' where the *æt* has been erased by some later hand, showing that the idiom had become obsolete. Cp. the German 'Gasthaus zur Krone,' Stamboul = *es tām pōlin*." (Sweet.) See, also, *Atterbury*, § 28, Note 3.

14-15. wæs . . . þā igland. The singular predicate is due again to inversion (p. 100, note on *gefeah*). The construction is comparatively rare in O.E., but frequent in Shakespeare and in the popular speech of to-day. Cf. *There is*, *Here is*, *There has been*, etc., with a (single) plural subject following.

1 on stēorbord, and on bæcbord him wæs Langaland, and
 2 Læland, and Falster, and Scōnēg; and pās land eall
 3 hȳrað tō Dēnemearcen. And þonne Burgenda land wæs
 4 ūs on bæcbord, and pā habbað him sylfe¹ cyning. Þonne
 5 æfter Burgenda lande wæron ūs pās land, pā synd hātene
 6 ærest Blēcinga-ēg, and Mēore, and Ēowland, and Gotland
 7 on bæcbord; and pās land hȳrað tō Swēom. And Weo-
 8 nodland wæs ūs ealne weg on stēorbord oð Wīsemūðan.
 9 Sēo Wīse is swȳðe mycel ēa, and hīo² tōlīð Wītland and
 10 Weonodland; and þæt Wītland belimpeð tō Estum; and
 11 sēo Wīse līð ūt of Weonodlande, and līð in Estmēre;
 12 and sē Estmēre is hūru fiftēne³ mīla brād. Þonne cymeð
 13 Ilfing ēastan in Estmēre of ðæm mēre, ðe Trūsō standeð
 14 in stæðe; and cumað ūt samod in Estmēre, Ilfing ēastan
 15 of Estlande, and Wīse sūðan of Winodlande. And
 16 þonne benimð Wīse Ilfing hire naman, and ligeð of þæm
 17 mēre west and norð on sē; for ðȳ hit man hæt Wīse-
 18 mūða.

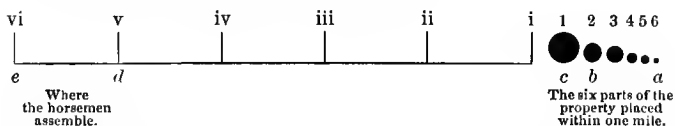
19 Þæt Estland is swȳðe mycel, and pær bið swȳðe manig
 20 burh, and on ælcere byrig bið cyning. And pær bið
 21 swȳðe mycel hunig, and fīsenað; and sē cyning and pā
 22 rīcostan mēn drīncað mȳran meole, and pā unspēdigan
 23 and pā pēowan drīncað medo.⁴ pær bið swȳðe mycel
 24 gewinn betwēonan him. And ne bið ðær nānig ealo⁵
 25 gebrowen mid Estum, ac pær bið medo genōh. And pær
 26 is mid Estum ðēaw, þonne pær bið man dēad, þæt hē līð
 27 inne unforbærned mid his māgum and frēondum mōnað,
 28 ge hwīlum twēgen; and pā cyningas, and pā oðre hēah-
 29 ðungene mēn, swā mīcle lēncg⁶ swā hī māran spēda
 30 habbað, hwīlum healf gēar þæt hī bēoð unforbærned, and

1-4. **him** . . . **ūs**. Note the characteristic change of person, the transition from *indirect* to *direct discourse*.

1 licgað bufan eorðan on hyra hūsum. And ealle þā hwīle
 2 þe þæt līc bið inne, þær sceal bēon gedrync and plega,
 3 oð ðone dæg þe hī hine forbærnað. Þonne þȳ ylcan dæge
 4 þe hī hine tō þām āde beran wyllað, þonne tōdælað hī
 5 his feoh, þæt þær tō lāfe bið æfter þām gedrynce and þām
 6 plegan, on fīf oððe syx, hwȳlum on mā, swā swā þæs fēos
 7 andēfn bið. Ālēcgað hit ðonne forhwæga on ānre mīle
 8 þone mæstan dæl fram þām tūne, þonne oðerne, ðonne
 9 þone þridan, oþ þe hyt eall alēd bið on þære ānre mīle;
 10 and sceall bēon sē læsta dæl nȳhst þām tūne ðe sē dēada
 11 man on līð. Ðonne sceolou⁷ bēon gesamnode ealle ðā
 12 mēnn ðe swyftoste hors habbað on þām lande, forhwæga
 13 on fīf mīlum oððe on syx mīlum fram þām fēo. Þonne
 14 ærnað hȳ ealle tōweard þām fēo: ðonne cymeð sē man
 15 sē þæt swyftoste hors hafað tō þām ærestan dæle and tō
 16 þām mæstan, and swā ælc æfter oðrum, oþ hit bið eall
 17 genumen; and sē nimð þone læstan dæl sē nȳhst þām
 18 tūne þæt feoh gearneð. And þonne rīdeð ælc hys weges
 19 mid ðām fēo, and hyt mōtan⁸ habban eall; and for ðȳ
 20 þær bēoð þā swiftan hors ungefōge dȳre. And þonne his
 21 gestrēon bēoð þus eall āspēnded, þonne byrð man hine ūt,
 22 and forbærneð mid his wāpnūm and hrægle; and swīðost

2. **sceal.** See § 137, Note 2 (2).

7. **Ālēcgað hit.** Bosworth illustrates thus:



“The horsemen assemble five or six miles from the property, at *d* or *e*, and run towards *c*; the man who has the swiftest horse, coming first to 1 or *c*, takes the first and largest part. The man who has the horse coming second takes part 2 or *b*, and so, in succession, till the least part, 6 or *a*, is taken.”

1 ealle hys spēda hȳ forspēndað mid þām langan legere
 2 þæs dēadan mannes inne, and þæs þe hȳ be þām wegum
 3 ālēcgað, þe ðā frēmdan tō ærnað, and nimað. And þæt
 4 is mid Estum þēaw þæt þær sceal ælces geðēodes man
 5 bēon forbærned; and gyf þār⁹ man ān bāu findeð unfor-
 6 bærned, hī hit sceolan⁷ miclum gebētan. And þær is mid
 7 Estum ān mægð þæt hī magon cyle gewyrcean; and þȳ
 8 þær licgað þā dēadan mēn swā lange, and ne fūliað, þæt
 9 hȳ wyrcað þone cyle him on. And þeah man āsētte
 10 twēgen fāetels full ealað oððe wāteres, hȳ gedōð þæt
 11 ægþer bið oferfrozen, sam hit sȳ sumor sam winter.

¹ = selfe.⁴ = medu.⁷ = sculon.² = hēo.⁵ = ealu.⁸ = mōton.³ = fiftiene.⁶ = lēng.⁹ = ðær.

5-6. **man . . . hī.** Here the plural **hī** refers to the singular **man**. Cf. p. 109, ll. 18-19, **ælc . . . mōtan**. In *Exodus* xxxii, 24, we find "*Whosoever* hath any gold, let *them* break it off"; and Addison writes, "I do not mean that I think *anyone* to blame for taking due care of *their* health." The construction, though outlawed now, has been common in all periods of our language. Paul very sanely remarks (*Principien der Sprachgeschichte*, § 451) that "When a word is used as an indefinite [one, man, somebody, etc.] it is, strictly speaking, incapable of any distinction of number. Since, however, in respect of the external form, a particular number has to be chosen, it is a matter of indifference which this is. . . . Hence a change of numbers is common in the different languages."

IV. THE STORY OF CÆDMON.

[From the so-called Alfredian version of Bede's *Ecclesiastical History*. The text generally followed is that of MS. Bodley, Tanner 10. Miller (*Early English Text Society*, No. 95, *Introd.*) argues, chiefly from the use of the prepositions, that the original O.E. MS. was Mercian, composed possibly in Lichfield (Staffordshire). At any rate, O.E. idiom is frequently sacrificed to the Latin original.

"Cædmon, as he is called, is the first Englishman whose name we know who wrote poetry in our island of England; and the first to embody in verse the new passions and ideas which Christianity had brought into England. . . . Undisturbed by any previous making of lighter poetry, he came fresh to the work of Christianising English song. It was a great step to make. He built the chariot in which all the new religious emotions of England could now drive along." (Brooke, *The History of Early English Literature*, cap. XV.) There is no reason to doubt the historical existence of Cædmon; for Bede, who relates the story, lived near Whitby, and was seven years old when Cædmon died (A.D. 680)].

1 In ðysse abbudissan mynstre wæs sum brōðor syndrig-
 2 lice mid godecundre gife gemæred qnd geweorðad, for þon
 3 he gewunade gerisenlice lēoð wyrcan, þā ðe tō æfæstnisse¹
 4 qnd tō ārfæstnisse belumpon; swā ðætte swā hwæt swā
 5 hē of godecundum stafum þurh bōceras geleornode, þæt hē
 6 æfter medmiclum fæce in scopgereorde mid þā mæstan
 7 swētnisse qnd inbryrdnisse geglengde, qnd in Ænglisc-
 8 gereorde wel geworht forþ brōhte. Qnd for his lēopsqngum

1. **ðysse abbudissan.** The abbess referred to is the famous Hild, or Hilda, then living in the monastery at Streones-halh, which, according to Bede, means "Bay of the Beacon." The Danes afterward gave it the name Whitby, or "White Town." The surroundings were eminently fitted to nurture England's first poet. "The natural scenery which surrounded him, the valley of the Esk, on whose sides he probably lived, the great cliffs, the billowy sea, the vast sky seen from the heights over the ocean, played incessantly upon him." (Brooke.)

Note, also, in this connection, the numerous Latin words that the introduction of Christianity (A.D. 597) brought into the vocabulary of O.E.: **abbudisse**, **mynster**, **bisceop**, **Læden**, **prēost**, **æstel**, **mancus**.

1 mōnigra mōnna mōd oft to worulde forhogdnisse qnd tō
 2 gepēodnisse þæs heofonlīcan līfes onbærnde wæron. Qnd
 3 ēac swelce² mōnige ððre æfter him in Qngelpēode ongun-
 4 non æfeste lēoð wyrcan, ac nænig hwæðre him þæt gelīce
 5 dōn ne meahte; for þon hē nālæs frōm mōnum nē ðurh
 6 mōn gelæred wæs þæt hē ðone lēoðcræft leornade, ac hē
 7 wæs godcundlice gefultumod, qnd þurh Godes gife þone
 8 sōngcræft onfēng; qnd hē for ðon næfre nōht lēasunge,
 9 nē idles lēopes wyrcan ne meahte, ac efne þā ān ðā ðe tō
 10 æfēstnisse¹ belumpon, qnd his þā æfēstan tungan gedaf-
 11 enode singan.

12 Wæs hē, sē mōn, in weoruldhāde³ gesēted oð þā tīde þe
 13 hē wæs gelyfdre ylde, qnd næfre nænig lēoð geleornade.
 14 Qnd hē for þon oft in gebēorscipe, þonne þær wæs blisse
 15 intinga gedēmed, þæt hēo⁴ ealle sceolden þurh endebyrd-
 16 nesse be hearpan singan, þonne hē geseah þā hearpan him
 17 nēalēcan, þonne ārās hē for sōme frōm þām symble,
 18 qnd hām ēode tō his hūse. þā hē þæt þā sumre tīde
 19 dyde, þæt hē forlēt þæt hūs þæs gebēorscipes, qnd ūt wæs

4-5. The more usual order of words would be **ac nænig, hwæðre, ne meahte ðæt dōn gelīce him.**

10-11. **qnd his . . . singan**, and which it became his (the) pious tongue to sing.

14-15. **blisse intinga**, for the sake of joy; but the translator has confused *laetitiae causā* (ablative) and *laetitiae causa* (nominative). The proper form would be **for blisse** with omission of **intingan**, just as *for my sake* is usually **for mē**; *for his (or their) sake*, **for him**. Cf. Mark vi, 26: "Yet for his oath's sake, and for their sakes which sat with him, he would not reject her," **for ðām āðe, qnd for ðām þe him mid sæton**. *For his sake* is frequently **for his ðingon** (**ðingum**), rarely **for his intingan**. **Þingon** is regularly used when the preceding genitive is a noun denoting a person: *for my wife's sake*, **for mīnes wīfes ðingon** (*Genesis* xx, 11), etc.

18-19. **þæt . . . þæt hē forlēt**. The substantival clause introduced by the second **þæt** amplifies by apposition the first **þæt**: *When he then, at a certain time* (instrumental case, § 98, (2)), *did*

1 gongende tō nēata scipene, pāra heord him wæs pære
 2 nihte beboden; pā hē ðā pær on gelimpliere tīde his
 3 leomu⁵ on reſte geſette qnd onslēpte, pā stōd him sum
 4 mōn æt purh swefn, qnd hine hālette qnd grētte, qnd hine
 5 be his nōman nēmnde: “Cædmōn, ſing mē hwæthwugu.”
 6 Pā qndswarede hē, qnd cwæð: “Ne cōn ic nōht ſingan;
 7 qnd ic for þon of pyſſum gebēorſcipe ūt ēode qnd hider
 8 gewāt, for þon ic nāht ſingan ne cūðe.” Eft hē cwæð ſē ðe
 9 wið hine ſprecende wæs: “Hwæðre þū meaht mē ſingan.”
 10 Pā cwæð hē: “Hwæt ſeal ic ſingan?” Cwæð hē: “Sing
 11 mē frumsceaft.” Pā hē ðā pās andſware onfēng, pā
 12 ongon hē ſōna ſingan, in hērenesse Godes Scyppendes,
 13 pā fers qnd pā word þe hē nāfre ne gehyrd, pāra ende-
 14 byrdnes þis is:

15 Nū ſculon hērigea⁶n heofonrīces Weard,
 16 Metodes meahte qnd his mōdgeþanc,
 17 weorc Wuldorfæder, swā hē wundra gehwæs,
 18 ēce Drihten ōr onſtealde.

that, namely, when he left the house. The better Mn.E. would be this . . . that: “Added yet this above all, that he shut up John in prison” (Luke iv, 20).

1-2. **pāra . . . beboden.** This does not mean that Cædmon was a herdsman, but that he served in turn as did the other secular attendants at the monastery.

13-14. **pāra endebyrdnes þis is.** Bede writes *Hic est sensus, non autem ordo ipse verborum*, and gives in Latin prose a translation of the hymn from the Northumbrian dialect, in which Cædmon wrote. The O.E. version given above is, of course, not the Northumbrian original (which, however, with some variations is preserved in several of the Latin MSS. of Bede's *History*), but a West Saxon version made also from the Northumbrian, not from the Latin.

15. **Nū ſculon hērigeaⁿ**, *Now ought we to praise.* The subject **wē** is omitted in the best MSS. Note the characteristic use of synonyms, or epithets, in this bit of O.E. poetry. Observe that it is not the *thought* that is repeated, but rather the *idea*, the *concept*, God. See p. 124.

17. **wundra gehwæs.** See p. 140, note on **cēnra gehwylcum.**

- 1 Hē ārest scēop eorðan bearnum
2 heofon tō hrōfe, hālig Scyppend ;
3 þā middangeard mōncynnes Weard,
4 ēce Drihten, æfter tēode
5 fīrum foldan, Frēa ælmihtig.
- 6 þā ārās hē frōm þām slāpe, qnd eal þā pe hē slāpende
7 sōng fæste in gemynde hæfde; qnd þām wordum sōna
8 mōnig word in þæt ilce gemet Gode wyrðes sōnges tō-
9 geþēodde. þā cōm hē on morgenne tō þām tūngerēfan,
10 sē pe his ealdormōn wæs: sægde him hwylce gife hē
11 onfēng; qnd hē hine sōna tō þære abbudissan gelædde,
12 qnd hire þæt cýðde qnd sægde. þā heht hēo gesōmnian
13 ealle þā gelæredestan mēn qnd þā leorneras, qnd him
14 qndweardum hēt sēgan þæt swefn, qnd þæt lēoð singan,
15 þæt ealra heora⁷ dōme gecoreu wære, hwæt oððe hwōnan
16 þæt cumen wære. þā wæs him eallum gesewen, swā swā
17 hit wæs, þæt him wære frōm Drihtne sylfum heofonlic

7-9. qnd þām wordum . . . tōgeþēodde, and to those words he soon joined, in the same meter, many (other) words of song worthy of God. But the translator has not only blundered over Bede's Latin (*eis mox plura in eundem modum verba Deo digna carminis adjunxit*), but sacrificed still more the idiom of O.E. The predicate should not come at the end; **in** should be followed by the dative; and for **Gode wyrðes sōnges** the better O.E. would be **sōnges Godes wyrðes**. When used with the dative **wyrð** (**weorð**) usually means *dear* (= of worth) to.

16. þā . . . gesewen. We should expect **frōm him eallum**; but the translator has again closely followed the Latin (*visumque est omnibus*), as later (in the *Conversion of Edwin*) he renders *Talis mihi videtur* by **pyslic mē is gesewen**, *Talis* (**pyslic**) agreeing with a following *vita* (**lif**). Ælfric, however, with no Latin before him, writes that John **wearð ðā him [= frōm Drihtene] inweardlice gelufod**. It would seem that in proportion as a past participle has the force of an adjective, the *to* relation may supplant the *by* relation; just as we say *unknown to* instead of *unknown by*, *unknown* being more adjectival than participial. **Gesewen**, therefore, may here be

1 gifu forgifen. þā rehton hēo⁴ him qnd sægdon sum hālig
 2 spell qnd godecundre lāre word: bebudon him þā, gif hē
 3 meahste, þæt hē in swīnsunge lēopsonges þæt gehwyrfe.
 4 þā hē ðā hæfde þā wīsan onfongne, þā ēode hē hām tō
 5 his hūse, qnd cwōm eft on morgenne, qnd þȳ bēstan
 6 lēoðe geglēnged him āsong qnd āgeaf þæt him beboden
 7 wæs.

8 Ðā ongan sēo abbudisse clyppan qnd lufigean⁸ þā Godes
 9 gife in þām mēn, qnd hēo hine þā mōnade qnd lārde
 10 þæt hē woruldhād forlēte qnd munuchād onfēnge: qnd
 11 hē þæt wel pafode. Qnd hēo hine in þæt mynster onfēng
 12 mid his gōdum, qnd hine gepēodde tō gesōmnunge þāra
 13 Godes pēowa, qnd heht hine lāran þæt getæl þæs hālgan
 14 stāres qnd spellas. Qnd hē eal þā hē in gehȳrnesse
 15 geleornian meahste, mid hine gemyndgade, qnd swā swā
 16 clāne nēten⁹ eodorcende in þæt swēteste lēoð gehwyrfe.
 17 Qnd his song qnd his lēoð wāron swā wynsumn tō gehȳr-
 18 anne, þætte þā seolfan¹⁰ his lārēowas æt his mūðe writon
 19 qnd leornodon. Song hē ārest be middangeardes gesceape,
 20 qnd bī fruman mōncynnes, qnd eal þæt stār Genesis (þæt
 21 is sēo āreste Moyses bōc); qnd eft bī ūtgonge Israhēla
 22 folces of Ægypta lōnde, qnd bī ingonge þæs gehātlandes;
 23 qnd bī ðōrnū mōnegum spellum þæs hālgan gewrites

translated *visible, evident, patent* (= *gesynelīc, sweotol*); and *geluf-
 oð, dear* (= *weorð, lēof*).

A survival of adjectival *gesewen* is found in Wycliffe's *New Testament* (1 Cor. xv, 5-8): "He was *seyn* to Cephas, and aftir these thingis to enleuene; aftirward he was *seyn* to mo than fyue hundrid britheren togidere . . . aftirward he was *seyn* to James, and aftirward to alle the apostlis. And last of alle he was *seyn* to me, as to a deed borun child." The construction is frequent in Chaucer.

9-10. *qnd hēo hine þā mōnade . . . munuchād onfēnge*. Hild's advice has in it the suggestion of a personal experience, for she herself had lived half of her life (thirty-three years) "before," says Bede, "she dedicated the remaining half to our Lord in a monastic life."

1 canōnes bōca; ƿnd bī Crīstes mēnnisenesse, ƿnd bī his
 2 ƿrōwunge, ƿnd bī his ūpāstīgnesse in heofonas; ƿnd bī
 3 ƿæs Hālgan Gāstes cyme, ƿnd ƿāra apostola lāre; ƿnd eft
 4 bī ƿām dæge ƿæs tōweardan dōmes, ƿnd bī fyrhtu ƿæs
 5 tintreglīcan wītes, ƿnd bī swētnesse ƿæs heofonlīcan rīces,
 6 hē mōnig lēoð geworhte; ƿnd swelce² ēac oðer mōnig be
 7 ƿām godcundan frēmsumnessum ƿnd dōmum hē geworhte.
 8 In eallum ƿām hē geornlīce gēmdē¹¹ ƿæt hē mēn ātuge
 9 frōm synna lufan ƿnd māndāda, ƿnd tō lufan ƿnd tō
 10 geornfulnessse āwēhte gōdra dāda; for ƿon hē wæs, sē
 11 mōn, swīpe āfēst ƿnd regollīcum ƿēodscīpum ēađmōdlīce
 12 underƿēoded; ƿnd wið ƿām ƿā ðe in oðre wīsan dōn woldon,
 13 hē wæs mid welme¹² micelre ellenwōdnisse onbærned.
 14 Qnd hē for ðon fægre ende his lif betynde ƿnd geendade.

1 = āfæstnesse.

2 = swilce.

3 = woruldhāde.

4 = hie.

5 = limu.

6 = herian.

7 = hiera.

8 = lufian.

9 = nīeten.

10 = selfan.

11 = giemde.

12 = wielme.

V. ALFRED'S PREFACE TO THE PASTORAL CARE.

[Based on the Hatton MS. Of the year 597, the *Chronicle* says: "In this year, Gregory the Pope sent into Britain Augustine with very many monks, who gosselled [preached] God's word to the English folk." Gregory I, surnamed "The Great," has ever since been considered the apostle of English Christianity, and his *Pastoral Care*, which contains instruction in conduct and doctrine for all bishops, was a work that Alfred could not afford to leave untranslated. For this translation Alfred wrote a *Preface*, the historical value of which it would be hard to overrate. In it he describes vividly the intellectual ruin that the Danes had wrought, and develops at the same time his plan for repairing that ruin.

6. hē mōnig lēoð geworhte. The opinion is now gaining ground that of these "many poems" only the short hymn, already given, has come down to us. Of other poems claimed for Cædmon, the strongest arguments are advanced in favor of a part of the fragmentary poetical paraphrase of *Genesis*.

This *Preface* and the *Battle of Ashdown* (p. 99) show the great king in his twofold character of warrior and statesman, and justify the inscription on the base of the statue erected to him in 1877, at Wantage (Berkshire), his birth-place: "Ælfred found Learning dead, and he restored it; Education neglected, and he revived it; the laws powerless, and he gave them force; the Church debased, and he raised it; the Land ravaged by a fearful Enemy, from which he delivered it. Ælfred's name will live as long as mankind shall respect the Past."]

1 Ælfred kyning hāteð grētan Wærferð biscep¹ his wordum
2 luflice ond frēondlice; ond ðe cýðau hāte ðæt mē cōm
3 swiðe oft on gemynd, hwelce² witan iu³ wæron giond⁴
4 Angelecynn, ægðer ge godeundra hāda ge woruldcundra;
5 ond hū gesæliglica tīda ðā wæron giond Angelecynn; ond
6 hū ðā kyningas ðe ðone onwald hæfdon ðæs folces on
7 ðām dagum Gode ond his ærendwrecum hērsumedon⁵;
8 ond hū hīe ægðer ge hiora sibbe ge hiora siodo⁶ ge hiora
9 onweald innanbordes gehioldon,⁴ ond ēac ūt hiora eðel
10 gerȳmdon; ond hū him ðā spēow ægðer ge mid wīge ge
11 mid wīsdōme; ond ēac ðā godcundan hādas hū giorne
12 hīe wæron ægðer ge ymb lāre ge ymb liornunga, ge ymb
13 ealle ðā ðiowotdōmas ðe hīe Gode dōn scoldon; qud hū
14 man ūtanbordes wīsdōm ond lāre hieder on lōnd sōhte,
15 ond hū wē hīe nū sceoldon ūte begietan, gif wē hīe habban
16 sceoldon. Swā⁷ clāne hīo wæs oðfeallenu on Angelcynne
17 ðæt swiðe fēawa wæron behionan Humbre ðe hiora ðēninga
18 cūðen understōndan on Ænglisc oððe furðum ān ærendge-
19 writ of Lādene on Ænglisc āreccēan; ond ic wēne ðætte
20 nōht mōuige begiōndan Humbre nāren. Swā⁷ fēawa
21 hiora wæron ðæt ic furðum ānne ānlēpne⁸ ne mæg geðenc-

1-2. *Ælfred kyning hāteð . . . hāte.* Note the change from the formal and official third person (*hāteð*) to the more familiar first person (*hāte*). So *Ælfric*, in his *Preface to Genesis*, writes *Ælfric munuc grēt Æðelwærd ealdormann eadmōdlice. þū bāde mē, lēof, þæt ic, etc.* *Ælfric, monk, greets Æthelweard, alderman, humbly. Thou, beloved, didst bid me that I, etc.*

1 ean be sūðan Tēmeſe, ðā ðā ic tō rīce fēng. Gode æl-
 2 mihtegum sīe ðone ðætte wē nū ænigne onstāl habbað
 3 lārēowa. Qnd for ðon ic ðē bebiode ðæt ðū dō swæ⁷ ic
 4 geliefe ðæt ðū wille, ðæt ðū ðē ðissa worulddinga tō ðæm
 5 geæmetige, swæ ðū oftost mæge, ðæt ðū ðone wīsdōm ðe
 6 ðē God sealde ðær ðær ðū hiene befæstan mæge, befæste.
 7 Geðenc hwele⁹ wītu ūs ðā becōmon for ðisse worulde, ðā
 8 ðā wē hit nōhwæðer nē selfe ne lufodon, nē ēac oðrum
 9 mōnnum ne lēfdon¹⁰: ðone naman āne wē lufodon ðætte
 10 wē Crīstne wæren, qnd swīðe fēawe ðā ðēawas.

11 Ðā ic ðā ðis eall gemunde, ðā gemunde ic ēac hū ic
 12 geseah, ær ðæm ðe hit eall forhergod wære qnd for-
 13 bærned, hū ðā ciricean giond eall Angeleynn stōdon
 14 māðma qnd bōca gefylða, qnd ēac micel menigeo¹¹ Godes
 15 ðīowa; qnd ðā swīðe lýtle fiorme ðāra bōca wiston, for
 16 ðæm ðe hīe hiora nānwuht¹² ongietan ne meahton, for
 17 ðæm ðe hīe næron on hiora āgen geðiode āwritene.
 18 Swelce¹³ hīe cwæden: “Ūre ieldran, ðā ðe ðās stōwa ær
 19 hīoldon, hīe lufodon wīsdōm, qnd ðurh ðone hīe begēaton
 20 welan, qnd ūs lēfdon. Hēr mōn mæg giet gesion hiora
 21 swæð, ac wē him ne cunnon æfter spyrigean,¹⁴ qnd for
 22 ðæm wē habbað nū ægðer forlæten ge ðone welan ge ðone
 23 wīsdōm, for ðæm ðe wē noldon tō ðæm spore mid ūre
 24 mōde onlūtan.”

25 Ðā ic ðā ðis eall gemunde, ðā wundrade ic swīðe swīðe
 26 ðāra gōdena wiotona¹⁵ ðe gīu wæron giond Angeleynn, qnd
 27 ðā bēc ealla be fullan geliornod hæfdon, ðæt hīe hiora ðā

5. Notice that **mæge** (l. 5) and **mæge** (l. 6) are not in the subjunctive because the sense requires it, but because they have been attracted by **geæmetige** and **befæste**. **Sīen** (p. 119, l. 15) and **hæbben** (p. 119, l. 20) illustrate the same construction.

9-10. *We liked only the reputation of being Christians, very few (of us) the Christian virtues.*

1 nænne dæl noldon on hiora āgen geðiode wendan. Ac
2 ic ðā sōna eft mē selfum andwyrde, qnd cwæð: "Hīe ne
3 wēndon þætte æfre mēnn sceolden swæ⁷ recceleāse weor-
4 ðan, qnd sīo lār swæ oðfeallan; for ðære wilnunga hīe
5 hit forlēton, qnd woldon ðæt hēr ðȳ māra wīsdōm on
6 lōnde wære ðȳ wē mā geðēoda cūðon."

7 Ðā gemunde ic hū sīo æ wæs ærest on Ebrēisc geðiode
8 funden, qnd eft, ðā hīe Crēacas geliornodon, ðā wendon
9 hīe hīe on hiora āgen geðiode ealle, qnd ēac ealle oðre
10 bēc. Qnd eft Lādenware swæ same, siððan hīe hīe ge-
11 liornodon, hīe hīe wendon ealla ðurh wīse wealhstōdas
12 on hiora āgen geðiode. Qnd ēac ealla oðra Crīstena
13 ðīoda sumne dæl hiora on hiora āgen geðiode wendon.
14 For ðȳ mē ðyncð bētre, gif īow swæ ðyncð, ðæt wē ēac
15 suma bēc, ðā ðe nīedbeðearfosta sīen eallum mōnnum
16 tō wiotonne,¹⁶ ðæt wē ðā on ðæt geðiode wenden ðe wē
17 ealle gecnāwan mægen, qnd gedōn swæ wē swīðe ēaðe
18 magon mid Godes fultume, gif wē ðā stilnesse habbað,
19 ðætte eall sīo gioguð ðe nū is on Angelcynne frīora
20 mōnna, ðāra ðe ðā spēða hæbben ðæt hīe ðām befeolan
21 mægen, sīen tō liornunga oðfæste, ðā hwīle ðe hīe tō

14. Alfred is here addressing the bishops collectively, and hence uses the plural **īow** (= **ēow**), not **þē**.

16. **Ðæt wē ðā**. These three words are not necessary to the sense. They constitute the figure known as epanalepsis, in which "the same word or phrase is repeated after one or more intervening words." **þā** is the pronominal substitute for **suma bēc**.

17. **Gedōn** is the first person plural subjunctive (from infinitive **gedōn**). It and **wenden** are in the same construction. Two things seem "better" to Alfred: (1) *that we translate*, etc., (2) *that we cause*, etc.

19-21. **sīo gioguð . . . is . . . hīe . . . sīen**. Notice how the collective noun, **gioguð**, singular at first both in form and function, gradually loses its oneness before the close of the sentence is reached, and becomes plural. The construction is entirely legitimate

1 nānre oðerre note ne mægen, oð ðone first ðe hīe wel
 2 cunnen Ænglisc gewrit ārædan: lære mōn siððan furður
 3 on Lædengeðīode ðā ðe mōn furðor lēran wille, qnd tō
 4 hīerran hāde dōn wille. Ðā ic ðā gemunde hū sīo lār
 5 Lædengeðīodes ær ðissum āfeallen wæs giond Angel-
 6 cynn, qnd ðeah mōnige cūðon Ænglisc gewrit ārædan, ðā
 7 ongan ic ongemang oðrum mislīcum qnd manigfealdum
 8 bisgum ðisses kynerīces ðā bōc wendan on Ænglisc ðe is
 9 genemned on Læden "Pastoralis," qnd on Ænglisc "Hier-
 10 debōc," hwīlum word be worde, hwīlum andgit of and-
 11 giete, swæ swæ ic hīe geliornode æt Plegmunde mīnum
 12 ærcebiscepe, qnd æt Assere mīnum biscepe, qnd æt Grim-
 13 bolde mīnum mæsseprīoste, qnd æt Iōhanne mīnum mæs-
 14 seprēoste. Siððan ic hīe ðā geliornod hæfde, swæ swæ
 15 ic hīe forstōd, qnd swæ ic hīe andgitfullīcost āreccēan
 16 meahte, ic hīe on Ænglisc āwende; qnd tō ælcum biscep-
 17 stōle on mīnum rīce wille āne onsendan; qnd on ælcere
 18 bið ān æstel, sē bið on fiftegum mancessa. Qnd ic be-
 19 biode on Godes naman ðæt nān mōn ðone æstel frōm
 20 ðære bēc ne dō, nē ðā bōc frōm ðām mynstre; uncūð hū
 21 lōnge ðær swæ gelærede biscepas sīen, swæ swæ nū, Gode
 22 ðqnc, wel hwær siendon. For ðȳ ic wolde ðætte hīe eal-

in Mn.E. Spanish is the only modern language known to me that condemns such an idiom: "Spanish ideas of congruity do not permit a collective noun, though denoting a plurality, to be accompanied by a plural verb or adjective in the same clause" (Ramsey, *Text-Book of Modern Spanish*, § 1452).

2. **lære mōn.** See § 105, 1.

11-13. That none of these advisers of the king, except Plegmond, a Mercian, were natives, bears out what Alfred says about the scarcity of learned men in England when he began to reign. Asser, to whose Latin *Life of Alfred*, in spite of its mutilations, we owe almost all of our knowledge of the king, came from St. David's (in Wales), and was made Bishop of Sherborne.

1 neg æt ðære stōwe wæren, būton sē biscep hīe mid him
 2 habban wille, oððe hīo hwær tō lāne sīe, oððe hwā oððe
 3 bī wīte.

¹ = bisceop.	² = hwilce.	³ = giu.
⁴ = For all words with <i>io</i> (<i>īo</i>), consult Glossary under <i>eo</i> (<i>ēo</i>).		
⁵ = hīersummedon.	⁹ = hwile.	¹³ = swilce.
⁶ = sidu (siodu).	¹⁰ = līefdon.	¹⁴ = spyrian.
⁷ = swā.	¹¹ = menīgu.	¹⁵ = wītena.
⁸ = ānlīpigne.	¹² = nānwiht.	¹⁶ = wītanne.

1. Translate **æt ðære stōwe** by *each in its place*. The change from plural **hīe** (in **hīe . . . wæren**) to singular **hīe** (in the clauses that follow) will thus be prepared for.

2-3. **oððe hwā oððe bī wīte**, or *unless some one wish to copy a new one (write thereby another)*.

POETRY.

INTRODUCTORY.

I. HISTORY.

(a) Old English Poetry as a Whole.

NORTHUMBRIA was the home of Old English poetry. Beginning with Cædmon and his school A.D. 670, Northumbria maintained her poetical supremacy till A.D. 800, seven years before which date the ravages of the Danes had begun. When Alfred ascended the throne of Wessex (871), the Danes had destroyed the seats of learning throughout the whole of Northumbria. As Whitby had been "the cradle of English poetry," Winchester (Alfred's capital) became now the cradle of English prose; and the older poems that had survived the fire and sword of the Vikings were translated from the original Northumbrian dialect into the West Saxon dialect. It is, therefore, in the West Saxon dialect that these poems¹ have come down to us.

Old English poetry contains in all only about thirty thousand lines; but it includes epic, lyric, didactic,

¹ This does not, of course, include the few short poems in the *Chronicle*, or that portion of *Genesis* (*Genesis B*) supposed to have been put directly into West Saxon from an Old Saxon original. There still remain in Northumbrian the version of *Cædmon's Hymn*, fragments of the *Ruthwell Cross*, *Bede's Death-Song*, and the *Leiden Riddle*.

elegiac, and allegorical poems, together with war-ballads, paraphrases, riddles, and charms. Of the five elegiac poems (*Wanderer*, *Seafarer*, *Ruin*, *Wife's Complaint*, and *Husband's Message*), the *Wanderer* is the most artistic, and best portrays the gloomy contrast between past happiness and present grief so characteristic of the Old English lyric.

Old English literature has no love poems. The central themes of its poets are battle and bereavement, with a certain grim resignation on the part of the hero to the issues of either. The movement of the thought is usually abrupt, there being a noticeable poverty of transitional particles, or connectives, "which," says Ten Brink, "are the cement of sentence-structure."

(b) **Beowulf.**

The greatest of all Old English poems is the epic, *Beowulf*.¹ It consists of more than three thousand lines, and probably assumed approximately its present form in Northumbria about A.D. 700. It is a crystallization of continental myths; and, though nothing is said of England, the story is an invaluable index to the social, political, and ethical ideals of our Germanic ancestors before and after they settled along the English coast. It is most poetical, and its testimony is historically most valuable, in the character-portraits that it contains. The fatalism that runs through it,

¹ The word *bēowulf*, says Grimm, meant originally *bee-wolf*, or *bee-enemy*, one of the names of the woodpecker. Sweet thinks the bear was meant. But the word is almost certainly a compound of *Bēow* (cf. O.E. *bēow* = grain), a Danish demigod, and *wulf* used as a mere suffix.

instead of making the characters weak and less human, serves at times rather to dignify and elevate them. "Fate," says Beowulf (l. 572), recounting his battle with the sea-monsters, "often saves an undoomed man *if his courage hold out.*"

"The ethical essence of this poetry," says Ten Brink, "lies principally in the conception of manly virtue, undismayed courage, the stoical encounter with death, silent submission to fate, in the readiness to help others, in the clemency and liberality of the prince toward his thanes, and the self-sacrificing loyalty with which they reward him."

NOTE 1. — Many different interpretations have been put upon the story of *Beowulf* (for argument of story, see texts). Thus Müllenhoff sees in Grendel the giant-god of the storm-tossed equinoctial sea, while Beowulf is the Scandinavian god Freyr, who in the spring drives back the sea and restores the land. Laistner finds the prototype of Grendel in the noxious exhalations that rise from the Frisian coast-marshes during the summer months; Beowulf is the wind-hero, the autumnal storm-god, who dissipates the effluvia.

II. STRUCTURE.

(a) Style.

In the structure of Old English poetry the most characteristic feature is the constant repetition of the idea (sometimes of the thought) with a corresponding variation of phrase, or epithet. When, for example, the Queen passes into the banquet hall in *Beowulf*, she is designated first by her name, **Wealhþēow**; she is then described in turn as **cwēn Hrōðgāres** (*Hrothgar's queen*), **gold-hroden** (*the gold-adorned*), **pā frēolīc wīf**

(the noble woman), **ides Helminga** (the *Helmings' lady*), **bēag-hroden cwēn** (the *ring-adorned queen*), **mōde gepungen** (the *high-spirited*), and **gold-hroden frēolīcu folc-cwēn** (the *gold-adorned, noble folk-queen*).

And whenever the sea enters largely into the poet's verse, not content with simple (uncompounded) words (such as **sæ**, **lagu**, **holm**, **strēam**, **mære**, etc.), he will use numerous other equivalents (phrases or compounds), such as **wapema gebind** (the *commingling of waves*), **lagu-flōd** (the *sea-flood*), **lagu-stræt** (the *sea-street*), **swan-rād** (the *swan-road*), etc. These compounds are usually nouns, or adjectives and participles used in a sense more appositive than attributive.

It is evident, therefore, that this abundant use of compounds, or periphrastic synonyms, grows out of the desire to repeat the idea in varying language. It is to be observed, also, that the Old English poets rarely make any studied attempt to balance phrase against phrase or clause against clause. Theirs is a repetition of idea, rather than a parallelism of structure.

NOTE 1. — It is impossible to tell how many of these synonymous expressions had already become stereotyped, and were used, like many of the epithets in the *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, purely as padding. When, for example, the poet tells us that at the most critical moment Beowulf's sword failed him, adding in the same breath, **iren ær-gōd** (matchless blade), we conclude that the bard is either nodding or parroting.

(b) Meter.

[Re-read § 10, (3).]

Primary Stress.

Old English poetry is composed of certain rhythmically ordered combinations of accented and unaccented

syllables. The accented syllable (the arsis) is usually long, and will be indicated by the macron with the acute accent over it (ˊ); when short, by the breve with the same accent (ˋ). The unaccented syllable or syllables (the thesis) may be long or short, and will be indicated by the oblique cross (×).

Secondary Stress.

A secondary accent, or stress, is usually put upon the second member of compound and derivative nouns, adjectives, and adverbs. This will be indicated by the macron with the grave accent, if the secondary stress falls on a long syllable (ˋ); by the breve with the same accent, if the secondary stress falls on a short syllable (ˊ). Nouns :

Hrōðgāres (ˊ ˋ ×), **fēondgrāpum** (ˊ ˋ ×), **frēomǣgum** (ˊ ˋ ×), **Ēast-Dēna** (ˊ ˊ ×), **Helmīnga** (ˊ ˋ ×), **Scyldīnga** (ˊ ˋ ×), **ānhaga** (ˊ ˊ ×), **Ecgþēowes** (ˊ ˋ ×), **sinc-fato** (ˊ ˊ ×).

Adjectives : ¹

æghwylcne (ˊ ˋ ×), **prīsthȳdig** (ˊ ˋ ×), **gold-hroden** (ˊ ˊ ×), **drēorigne** (ˊ ˋ ×), **gyldenre** (ˊ ˋ ×), **ōðerne** (ˊ ˋ ×), **gǣstlicum** (ˊ ˋ ×), **wynsume** (ˊ ˊ ×), **ǣnigne** (ˊ ˋ ×).

Adverbs : ²

unsōfte (ˊ ˋ ×), **heardlice** (ˊ ˋ ×), **sęmninga** (ˊ ˋ ×).

¹ It will be seen that the adjectives are chiefly derivatives in **-ig**, **-en**, **-er**, **-lic**, and **-sum**.

² Most of the adverbs belonging here end in **-lice**, **-unga**, and **-inga**, § 93, (1), (2) : such words as **æt-gǣdere**, **on-gēan**, **on-wég**, **tō-gēanes**, **tō-middes**, etc., are invariably accented as here indicated.

The Old English poets place also a secondary accent upon the ending of present participles (**-ende**), and upon the penultimate of weak verbs of the second class (§ 130), provided the root-syllable is long.¹ Present participles :

slæpendne (˘ ˘ x), **wis-hycgende** (˘ ˘ ˘ x), **flēotendra** (˘ ˘ x), **hrēosende** (˘ ˘ x).

Weak verbs :

swynsode (˘ ˘ x), **pancode** (˘ ˘ x), **wānigean** (˘ ˘ x), **scēaw-ian** (˘ ˘ x), **scēawige** (˘ ˘ x), **hlīfian** (˘ ˘ x).

Resolved Stress.

A short accented syllable followed in the same word by an unaccented syllable (usually short also) is equivalent to one long accented syllable (˘ x = ˘). This is known as a resolved stress, and will be indicated thus, ˘x :

hæleða (˘x x), **guman** (˘x), **gode** (˘x), **sēle-ful** (˘x x), **ides** (˘x), **fyrena** (˘x x), **maðelode** (˘x ˘ x), **hogode** (˘x x), **mægen-ellen** (˘x ˘ x), **hige-pihtigne** (˘x ˘ ˘ x), **Metudes** (˘x x), **lagulāde** (˘x ˘ x), **unlyfigendes** (˘ ˘x ˘ x), **biforan** (x ˘x), **forþolian** (x ˘x x), **baðian** (˘x x), **worolde** (˘x x).

Resolution of stress may also attend secondary stresses :

sinc-fato (˘ ˘x), **dryht-sēle** (˘ ˘x), **ferðloca** (˘ ˘x), **forðwege** (˘ ˘x).

¹ It will save the student some trouble to remember that this means long by nature (**licodon**), or long by position (**swynsode**), or long by resolution of stress (**maðelode**), — see next paragraph.

The Normal Line.

Every normal line of Old English poetry has four primary accents, two in the first half-line and two in the second half-line. These half-lines are separated by the cesura and united by alliteration, the alliterative letter being found in the first stressed syllable of the second half-line. This syllable, therefore, gives the cue to the scansion of the whole line. It is also the only alliterating syllable in the second half-line. The first half-line, however, usually has two alliterating syllables, but frequently only one (the ratio being about three to two in the following selections). When the first half-line contains but one alliterating syllable, that syllable marks the first stress, rarely the second. The following lines are given in the order of their frequency:

- (1) *pæ̃r wæs hæleð̃a hléahtor ; hlýn swýnsode.*
- (2) *mōðe gepúngen, méðo-ful ætbæ̃r.*
- (3) *sōna pæt onfúnde fýrena hýrde.*

Any initial vowel or diphthong may alliterate with any other initial vowel or diphthong; but a consonant requires the same consonant, except *st*, *sp*, and *sc*, each of which alliterates only with itself.

Remembering, now, that either half-line (especially the second) may begin with several unaccented syllables (these syllables being known in types A, D, and E as the *anacrusis*), but that neither half-line can end with more than one unaccented syllable, the student may begin at once to read and properly accentuate Old English poetry. It will be found that the alliter-

ative principle does not operate mechanically, but that the poet employs it for the purpose of emphasizing the words that are really most important. Sound is made subservient to sense.

When, from the lack of alliteration, the student is in doubt as to what word to stress, let him first get the exact meaning of the line, and then put the emphasis on the word or words that seem to bear the chief burden of the poet's thought.

NOTE 1. — A few lines, rare or abnormal in their alliteration or lack of alliteration, may here be noted. In the texts to be read, there is one line with no alliteration: *Wanderer* 58; three of the type $a \cdots b \mid a \cdots b$: *Beowulf* 654, 830, 2746; one of the type $a \cdots a \mid b \cdots a$: *Beowulf* 2744; one of the type $a \cdots a \mid b \cdots c$: *Beowulf* 2718; and one of the type $a \cdots b \mid c \cdots a$: *Beowulf* 2738.

The Five Types.

By an exhaustive comparative study of the metrical unit in Old English verse, the half-line, Professor Eduard Sievers,¹ of the University of Leipzig, has shown that there are only five types, or varieties,

¹ Sievers' two articles appeared in the *Beiträge zur Geschichte der deutschen Sprache und Literatur*, Vols. X (1885) and XII (1887). A brief summary, with slight modifications, is found in the same author's *Altgermanische Metrik*, pp. 120-144 (1893).

Before attempting to employ Sievers' types, the student would do well to read several pages of Old English poetry, taking care to accentuate according to the principles already laid down. In this way his ear will become accustomed to the rhythm of the line, and he will see more clearly that Sievers' work was one primarily of systematization. Sievers himself says: "I had read Old English poetry for years exactly as I now scan it, and long before I had the slightest idea that what I did instinctively could be formulated into a system of set rules." (*Altgermanische Metrik*, Vorwort, p. 10.)

employed. These he classifies as follows, the perpendicular line serving to separate the so-called feet, or measures :

- | | | | | |
|------|-----------|---|------|--|
| 1. A | ∠ x ∠ x | } | 4. D | { D ¹ ∠ ∠ ∠ x
D ² ∠ ∠ x ∠ |
| 2. B | ^ ∠ ^ ∠ | | 5. E | { E ¹ ∠ ∠ x ∠
E ² ∠ x ∠ ∠ |
| 3. C | x ∠ ∠ x | | | |

It will be seen (1) that each half-line contains two, and only two, feet; (2) that each foot contains one, and only one, primary stress; (3) that A is trochaic, B iambic; (4) that C is iambic-trochaic; (5) that D and E consist of the same feet but in inverse order.

The Five Types Illustrated.

[All the illustrations, as hitherto, are taken from the texts to be read. The figures prefixed indicate whether first or second half-line is cited. B = *Beowulf*; W = *Wanderer*.]

1. TYPE A, ∠ x | ∠ x

Two or more unaccented syllables (instead of one) may intervene between the two stresses, but only one may follow the last stress. If the thesis in either foot is the second part of a compound it receives, of course, a secondary stress.

- | | | |
|------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------|
| (2) | ful gesealde, B. 616, | ∠ x ∠ x |
| (1) | widre gewindan, B. 764, | ∠ x x ∠ x |
| (1) ¹ | Gemunde þā sē gōða, B. 759, | x ∠ x x x ∠ x |
| (1) ¹ | swylce hē on ealder-ðagum, B. 758, | x x x x ∠ x ∠ x |
| (1) | ȳþde swā þisne eardgeard, W. 85, | ∠ x x x x ∠ ∠ |
| (1) | wīs-fæst wordum, B. 627, | ∠ ∠ ∠ x |
| (1) | gryre-lēoð galan, B. 787, | ∠ x ∠ ∠ x |
| (2) | somod ætgædre, W. 39, | ∠ x x ∠ x |

¹ The first perpendicular marks the limit of the anacrusis.

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| (1) <i>duguðe qnd geogoðe</i> , B. 622, | $\acute{x} x x \acute{x} x x$ |
| (1) <i>fæger fold-bold</i> , B. 774, | $\angle x \angle \angle$ |
| (1) <i>atelic egesa</i> , B. 785, | $\acute{x} \angle \acute{x} x$ |
| (2) <i>goldwine minne</i> , W. 22, | $\angle \acute{x} x \angle x$ |
| (1) <i>egesān þēon</i> [$> *þīhan$: § 118], B. 2737, | $\acute{x} x \angle x$ |

NOTE. — Rare forms of A are $\angle \angle x | \angle x$ (does not occur in texts), $\angle \angle x | \angle \angle$ (occurs once, B. 781 (1)), and $\angle x \angle | \angle x$ (once, B. 2743 (1)).

2. TYPE B, $x \angle | x \angle$

Two, but not more than two, unaccented syllables may intervene between the stresses. The type of B most frequently occurring is $x x \angle | x \angle$

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| (1) <i>qnd þā frēolīc wīf</i> , B. 616, | $x x \angle x \angle$ |
| (2) <i>hē on lust geþeah</i> , B. 619, | $x x \angle x \angle$ |
| (2) <i>þā se æðeling gīong</i> , B. 2716, | $x x \acute{x} x \angle$ |
| (2) <i>seah on ċnta geweorc</i> , B. 2718, | $x x \angle x x \angle$ |
| (1) <i>ofer flōða genipu</i> , B. 2809, | $x x \angle x x \acute{x}$ |
| (1) <i>forþam mē wītan ne þearf</i> , B. 2742, | $x x x \angle x x \angle$ |
| (2) <i>þaes þe hire se willa gelamp</i> , B. 627, | $x x x x \angle x x \angle$ |
| (1) <i>forþon ne mæg weorþan wīs</i> , W. 64, | $x x x x \angle x \angle$ |
| (1) <i>Nāfre ic ænegum</i> [= <i>æn'gum</i>] <i>mēn</i> , B. 656, | $x x x \angle x \angle$ |

NOTE. — In the last half-line Sievers substitutes the older form *ængum*, and supposes elision of the *e* in *Nāfre* (= *Nāfr-ic*: $x x \angle | x \angle$).

3. TYPE C, $x \angle | \angle x$

The conditions of this type are usually satisfied by compound and derivative words, and the second stress (not so strong as the first) is frequently on a short syllable. The two arses rarely alliterate. As in B, two unaccented syllables in the first thesis are more common than one.

- | | | |
|-----|---|----------------|
| (1) | þæt hēo on ænigne , B. 628, | x x x ∠ ∠ x |
| (1) | þæt ic ānunga , B. 635, | x x ∠ ∠ x |
| (2) | ēode gold-hroden , B. 641, | x x ∠ ∠ x |
| (1) | gemyne mærdō , B. 660, | x ∠x ∠ x |
| (1) | on þisse meodu-healle , B. 639, | x x x ∠x ∠ x |
| (2) | æt brimes nosan , B. 2804, | x ∠x ∠ x |
| (2) | æt Wealhþēon [= þēowan], B. 630, | x ∠ ∠ x |
| (1) | geond lagulāde , W. 3, | x ∠x ∠ x |
| (1) | Swā cwæð eardstapa , W. 6, | x x ∠ ∠ x |
| (2) | ēalā byrnwiga , W. 94, | x x ∠ ∠ x |
| (2) | nō þær fela bringeð , W. 54, | x x ∠x ∠ x |

$$4. \text{ TYPE D, } \begin{cases} D^1 \angle | \angle \angle x \\ D^2 \angle | \angle x \angle \end{cases}$$

Both types of D may take one unaccented syllable between the two primary stresses ($\angle x | \angle \angle x$, $\angle x | \angle x \angle$). The secondary stress in D^1 falls usually on the second syllable of a compound or derivative word, and this syllable (as in C) is frequently short.

(a) $D^1 \angle | \angle \angle x$

- | | | |
|-----|--|------------------|
| (1) | cwēn Hrōðgāres , B. 614, | ∠ ∠ ∠ x |
| (2) | dæl æghwylcne , B. 622, | ∠ ∠ ∠ x |
| (1) | Bēowulf maðelode , B. 632, | ∠ x ∠x ∠ x |
| (2) | slāt unwearnum , B. 742, | ∠ ∠ ∠ x |
| (1) | wrāpra wælsleahta , W. 7, | ∠ x ∠ ∠ x |
| (1) | wōd wintercearig [= wint'rcearig], W. 24, | ∠ ∠ ∠ x |
| (1) | sōhte seþe drēorig , W. 25, | ∠ x ∠x ∠ x |
| (1) | ne sōhte searo-nīðas , B. 2739, | x ∠ x ∠x ∠ x |

NOTE. — There is one instance in the texts (B. 613, (1)) of apparent $\angle x x | \angle \angle x$: **word wæron wynsume**. (The triple alliteration has no significance. The sense, besides, precludes our stressing **wæron**.) The difficulty is avoided by bringing the line under the A type: $\angle x x | \angle \angle x$.

(b) $D^2 \quad \angle \mid \angle \times \angle$

- | | | |
|-----|---------------------------------------|---|
| (2) | Forð nēar ætstōp , B. 746, | $\angle \mid \angle \times \angle$ |
| (2) | eorl furður stōp , B. 762, | $\angle \mid \angle \times \angle$ |
| (2) | Denum eallum wearð , B. 768, | $\angle \times \mid \angle \times \angle$ |
| (1) | grētte Gēata lēod , B. 626, | $\angle \times \mid \angle \times \angle$ |
| (1) | ænig yrfe-weard , B. 2732, | $\angle \times \mid \angle \times \angle$ |
| (1) | hrēosan hrīm and snāw , W. 48, | $\angle \times \mid \angle \times \angle$ |
| (2) | swimmað eft on weg , W. 53, | $\angle \times \mid \angle \times \angle$ |

Very rarely is the thesis in the second foot expanded.

- | | | |
|-----|--|--|
| (2) | þegn ungemete till , B. 2722, | $\angle \mid \angle \times \times \angle$ |
| (1) | hrūsan heolster biwrāh , W. 23, | $\angle \times \mid \angle \times \times \angle$ |

5. TYPE E, $\begin{cases} E^1 \angle \angle \times \mid \angle \\ E^2 \angle \times \angle \mid \angle \end{cases}$

The secondary stress in E^1 falls frequently on a short syllable, as in D^1 .

(a) $E^1 \angle \angle \times \mid \angle$

- | | | |
|-----|------------------------------------|---|
| (1) | wyrmlicum fāh , W. 98, | $\angle \angle \times \mid \angle$ |
| (2) | medo-ful ætbær , B. 625, | $\angle \times \angle \times \mid \angle$ |
| (1) | sæ-bāt gesæt , B. 634, | $\angle \angle \times \mid \angle$ |
| (1) | sige-folca swēg , B. 645, | $\angle \times \angle \times \mid \angle$ |
| (2) | Norð-Denum stōd , B. 784, | $\angle \angle \times \mid \angle$ |
| (1) | fēond-grāpum fæst , B. 637, | $\angle \angle \times \mid \angle$ |
| (2) | wyn eal gedrēas , W. 36, | $\angle \angle \times \mid \angle$ |
| (2) | feor oft gemōn , W. 90, | $\angle \angle \times \mid \angle$ |

As in D^2 , the thesis in the first foot is very rarely expanded.

- | | | |
|-----|--|---|
| (1) | wīn-ærnes geweald , B. 655, | $\angle \angle \times \times \mid \angle$ |
| (1) | Hafa nū qnd geheald , B. 659, | $\angle \times \angle \times \times \mid \angle$ |
| (1) | searo-þoncum besmiðod , B. 776, | $\angle \times \angle \times \times \mid \angle \times$ |

NOTE. — Our ignorance of Old English sentence-stress makes it impossible for us to draw a hard-and-fast line in all cases between D² and E¹. For example, in these half-lines (already cited),

wyn eal gedrēas
feor oft gemōn
Forð nēar ætstōp

if we throw a strong stress on the adverbs that precede their verbs, the type is D². Lessen the stress on the adverbs and increase it on the verbs, and we have E¹. The position of the adverbs furnishes no clue; for the order of words in Old English was governed not only by considerations of relative emphasis, but by syntactic and euphonic considerations as well.

(b) E² ∠ × ∷ ∠

This is the rarest of all types. It does not occur in the texts, there being but one instance of this type (l. 2437 (2)), and that doubtful, in the whole of *Beowulf*.

Abnormal Lines.

The lines that fall under none of the five types enumerated are comparatively few. They may be divided into two classes, (1) hypermetrical lines, and (2) defective lines.

(1) HYPERMETRICAL LINES.

Each hypermetrical half-line has usually three stresses, thus giving six stresses to the whole line instead of two. These lines occur chiefly in groups, and mark increased range and dignity in the thought. Whether the half-line be first or second, it is usually of the A type without anacrusis. To this type belong the last five lines of the *Wanderer*. Lines 92 and 93 are also unusually long, but not hypermetrical. The

first half-line of 65 is hypermetrical, a fusion of A and C, consisting of ($\angle \times \times \times \underline{\angle} | \angle \times$).

(2) DEFECTIVE LINES.

The only defective lines in the texts are B. 748 and 2715 (the second half-line in each). As they stand, these half-lines would have to be scanned thus:

rǣhte ongēan	$\angle \times \times \angle$
bealo-nīð wēoll	$\underline{\angle} \times \angle \angle$

Sievers emends as follows:

rǣhte tōgēanes	$\angle \times \times \angle \times$	= A
bealo-nīðe wēoll	$\underline{\angle} \times \angle \times \angle$	= E ¹

These defective half-lines are made up of syntactic combinations found on almost every page of Old English prose. That they occur so rarely in poetry is strong presumptive evidence, if further evidence were needed, in favor of the adequacy of Sievers' five-fold classification.

NOTE. — All the lines that could possibly occasion any difficulty to the student have been purposely cited as illustrations under the different types. If these are mastered, the student will find it an easy matter to scan the lines that remain.

SELECTIONS FOR READING.

VI. EXTRACTS FROM BEOWULF.

THE BANQUET IN HEOROT. [Lines 612-662.]

[The Heyne-Socin text has been closely followed. I have attempted no original emendations, but have deviated from the Heyne-Socin edition in a few cases where the Grein-Wülker text seemed to give the better reading.]

The argument preceding the first selection is as follows: Hrothgar, king of the Danes, or Scyldings, elated by prosperity, builds a magnificent hall in which to feast his retainers; but a monster, Grendel by name, issues from his fen-haunts, and night after night carries off thane after thane from the banqueting hall. For twelve years these ravages continue. At last Beowulf, nephew of Hygelac, king of the Geats (a people of South Sweden), sails with fourteen chosen companions to Dane-land, and offers his services to the aged Hrothgar. "Leave me alone in the hall to-night," says Beowulf. Hrothgar accepts Beowulf's proffered aid, and before the dread hour of visitation comes, the time is spent in wassail. The banquet scene follows.]

- 1 þær wæs hælepa hleahtor, hlyn swynsode,
- 2 word wæron wynsume. Æode Wealhþēow forð,
- 3 cwēn Hrōðgāres, cynna gemyndig;
- 4 grētte gold-hroden guman on healle, [615]
- 5 qnd þā frēolīc wīf ful gesealde
- 6 ærest Æast-Dēna ēpel-wearde,
- 7 bæd hine blīðne æt þære bēor-þege,
- 8 lēodum lēofne; hē on lust geþeah
- 9 symbel qnd sēle-ful, sige-rōf kyning. [620]
- 10 Ymb-ēode þā ides Helminga
- 11 duguðe qnd geogoðe dæl æghwylcne,

- 1 sinc-fato sealde, oð þæt sæl ālamp
 2 þæt hīo¹ Bēowulfe, bēag-hroden cwēn,
 3 mōde gepungen, medo²-ful ætbær; [625]
 4 grētte Gēata lēod, Gode þancode
 5 wīs-fæst wordum, þæs þe hire se willa gelamp,
 6 þæt hēo on ænigne eorl gelyfde
 7 fyrena frōfre. Hē þæt ful gepeah,
 8 wæl-rēow wiga, æt Wealhþēon, [630]
 9 ond pā gyddode gūðe gefȳsed;
 10 Bēowulf maðelode, bearn Ecgpēowes:
 11 “ Ic þæt hogode, pā ic on holm gestāh,
 12 sǣ-bāt gesæt mid mīnra sēcga gedriht,
 13 þæt ic ānunga ēowra lēoda [635]
 14 willan geworhte, oððe on wæl crunge
 15 fēond-grāpum fæst. Ic gefrēmmān sceal
 16 eorlic ellen, oððe ende-dæg
 17 on þisse meodu²-healle mīnne gebīdan.”
 18 Þām wīfe pā word wel licodon, [640]
 19 gilp-cwide Gēates; ēode gold-hroden
 20 frēolicu folc-cwēn tō hire frēan sittan.
 21 Þā wæs eft swā ær inne on healle
 22 prȳð-word sprecen,³ þēod on sǣlum,
 23 sige-folca swēg, op þæt sēmninga [645]

1. **sinc-fato sealde.** Banning (*Die epischen Formeln im Beowulf*) shows that the usual translation, *gave costly gifts*, must be given up; or, at least, that the *costly gifts* are nothing more than *beakers of mead*. The expression is an epic formula for *passing the cup*.

16-17. **ende-dæg . . . mīnne.** This unnatural separation of noun and possessive is frequent in O.E. poetry, but almost unknown in prose.

19-20. **ēode . . . sittan.** The poet might have employed **tō sittanne** (§ 108, (1)); but in poetry the infinitive is often used for the gerund. Alfred himself uses the infinitive or the gerund to express purpose after **gān**, **gongan**, **cuman**, and **sendan**.

- 1 sunu Healfðenes sēcean wolde
 2 æfen-ræste; wiste þām āhlæcan⁴
 3 tō þām hēah-sele hilde gepinged,
 4 siððan hīe sunnan lēoht gesēon *ne* meahton
 5 oððe nīpende niht ofer ealle, [650]
 6 scadu-helma gesceapu scrīðan cwōman,⁵
 7 wan under wolcnum. Werod eall ārās;
 8 grētte þā *giddum* guma oðerne
 9 Hrōðgār Bēowulf, qnd him hæl ābēad,
 10 wīn-ærnes gewæld, qnd þæt word ācwæð: [655]
 11 “ Næfre ic ænegum⁶ mēn ær ālyfde,
 12 siððan ic hōnd qnd rōnd hebban mihte,
 13 ðryþ-ærn Dena būton þē nū þā.
 14 Hafa nū qnd geheald hūsa sēlest,
 15 gemyne mārþo,⁷ mægen-ellen cȳð, [660]
 16 waca wið wrāðum. Ne bið þē wilna gād,
 17 gif þū þæt ellen-weorc aldre⁸ gedīgest.”

¹ = hēo.⁴ = āglæcan.⁷ = mārþe (acc. sing.).² = medu-.⁶ = cwōmon.⁸ = ealdre (instr. sing.)⁵ = gesprecen.⁶ = ænigum.

2-6. **wiste** . . **cwōman**. A difficult passage, even with Thorpe's inserted **ne**; but there is no need of putting a period after **gepinged**, or of translating **oððe** by *and*: *He (Hrothgar) knew that battle was in store (gepinged) for the monster in the high hall, after [= as soon as] they could no longer see the sun's light, or [= that is] after night came darkening over all, and shadowy figures stalking.* The subject of **cwōman** [= **cwōmon**] is **niht** and **gesceapu**.

The student will note that the infinitive (**scrīðan**) is here employed as a present participle after a verb of motion (**cwōman**). This construction with **cuman** is frequent in prose and poetry. The infinitive expresses the kind of motion: **ic cōm drīfan** = *I came driving*.

THE FIGHT BETWEEN BEOWULF AND GRENDEL. [Lines 740-837.]

[The warriors all retire to rest except Beowulf. Grendel stealthily enters the hall. From his eyes gleams "a luster unlovely, likest to fire." The combat begins at once.]

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------|
| 1 Ne þæt se āglæca yldan þōhte, | [740] |
| 2 ac hē gefēng hraðe forman sīðe | |
| 3 slæpendne rinc, slāt unwearnum, | |
| 4 bāt bān-locan, blōd ēdrum dranc, | |
| 5 syn-snædum swealh; sōna hæfde | |
| 6 unlyfigendes eal gefeormod | [745] |
| 7 fēt ƿnd folma. Forð nēar ætstōp, | |
| 8 nam þā mid handa hige-þihtigne | |
| 9 rinc on ræste; ræhte ongēan | |
| 10 fēond mid folme; hē onfēng hraþe | |
| 11 inwit-ƿancum ƿnd wið earm gesæt. | [750] |
| 12 Sōna þæt onfunde fyrena hyrde, | |
| 13 þæt hē ne mētte middan-geardes, | |
| 14 eorðan scēatta, on ƿlran mēn | |
| 15 mund-gripe māran; hē on mōde wearð | |

1. **þæt**, the direct object of **yldan**, refers to the contest about to ensue. Beowulf, in the preceding lines, was wondering how it would result.

7. **ætstōp**. The subject of this verb and of **nam** is Grendel; the subject of the three succeeding verbs (**ræhte**, **onfēng**, **gesæt**) is Beowulf.

12-13. The O.E. poets are fond of securing emphasis or of stimulating interest by indirect methods of statement, by suggesting more than they affirm. This device often appears in their use of negatives (**ne**, l. 13; p. 140, l. 3; **nō**, p. 140, l. 1), and in the unexpected prominence that they give to some minor detail usually suppressed because understood; as where the narrator, wishing to describe the terror produced by Grendel's midnight visits to Heorot, says (ll. 138-139), "Then was it easy to find one who elsewhere, more commodiously, sought rest for himself." It is hard to believe that the poet saw nothing humorous in this point of view.

- 1 forht, on ferhðe; nō þȳ ær fram meahste. [755]
 2 Hyge wæs him hin-fūs, wolde on heolster flēon,
 3 sēcan dēofla gedræg; ne wæs his drohtoð þær,
 4 swylce hē on ealder¹-dagum ær gemētte.
 5 Gemunde þā se gōda mæg Higelāces
 6 æfen-spræce, ūp-lang āstōd [760]
 7 ȝnd him fæste wiðfēng; fingras burston;
 8 eoten wæs ūt-weard; eorl furpur stōp.
 9 Mynte se mæra, hwær hē meahste swā,
 10 wīdre gewindan ȝnd on weg þanon
 11 flēon on fēn-hopu; wiste his fingra gewæld [765]
 12 on grames grāpum. Þæt wæs gēocor sīð,
 13 þæt se hearm-scaþa tō Heorute² ātēah.
 14 Dryht-sēle dynede; Denum eallum wearð
 15 ceaster-būendum, cēnra gehwylcum,
 16 eorlum ealu-scerwen. Yrre wæron bēgen [770]

1. **nō . . . meahste**, *none the sooner could he away*. The omission of a verb of motion after the auxiliaries **magan**, **mōtan**, **sculan**, and **willan** is very frequent. Cf. Beowulf's last utterance, p. 147, l. 17.

14. The lines that immediately follow constitute a fine bit of description by indication of effects. The two contestants are withdrawn from our sight; but we hear the sound of the fray crashing through the massive old hall, which trembles as in a blast; we see the terror depicted on the faces of the Danes as they listen to the strange sounds that issue from their former banquetting hall; by these sounds we, too, measure the progress and alternations of the combat. At last we hear only the "terror-lay" of Grendel, "lay of the beaten," and know that Beowulf has made good his promise at the banquet (**gilp gelæsted**).

15. **cēnra gehwylcum**. The indefinite pronouns (§ 77) may be used as adjectives, agreeing in case with their nouns; but they frequently, as here, take a partitive genitive: **ānra gehwylcum**, *to each one* (= *to each of ones*); **ænige** (instrumental) **þinga**, *for any thing* (= *for any of things*); **on healfa gehwone**, *into halves* (= *into each of halves*); **ealra dōgra gehwām**, *every day* (= *on each of all days*); **ūhtna gehwylce**, *every morning* (= *on each of mornings*).

- 1 rēpe rēn-weardas. Rēced hlýnsode ;
 2 þā wæs wundor micel, þæt se wīn-sele
 3 wiðhæfde heaƿo-dēorum, þæt hē on hrūsan ne fēol,
 4 fāger fold-bold ; ac hē ƿæs fæste wæs
 5 innan ond ūtan īren-bendum [775]
 6 searo-ƿoncum besmiðod. ƿær fram sylle ābēag
 7 medu-benc mōnig, mīne gefrāge,
 8 golde geregnad, ƿær þā graman wunnon ;
 9 ƿæs ne wēndon ær witan Scyldinga,
 10 þæt hit ā mid gemete manna ænig, [780]
 11 betlic ond bān-fāg, tōbrecean meahte,
 12 listum tōlūcan, nymfe liges fæðm
 13 swulge on swaƿule. Swēg ūƿ āstāg
 14 nīwe geneahhē ; Norð-Denum stōd
 15 atelic egesa, ānra gehwylcum, [785]
 16 ƿāra ƿe of wealle wōƿ gehȳrdon,
 17 gryre-lēoð galan Godes ondsacan,
 18 sige-lēasne sang, sār wānigean
 19 helle hæfton.³ Hēold hine fæste,
 20 sē ƿe manna wæs mægene strēngest [790]
 21 on þām dæge ƿysses līfes.
 22 Nolde eorla hlēo ænige ƿinga
 23 ƿone cwealm-cuman cwicne forlætan,
 24 nē his lif-dagas lēoda ænigum

10. Notice that **hit**, the object of **tōbrecean**, stands for **wīn-sele**, which is masculine. See p. 39, Note 2. **Manna** is genitive after **gemete**, not after **ænig**.

17-19. **gryre-lēoð** . . . **hæfton** [= **hæftan**]. Note that verbs of hearing and seeing, as in Mn.E., may be followed by the infinitive. They heard *God's adversary sing* (**galan**) . . . *hell's captive bewail* (**wānigean**). Had the present participle been used, the effect would have been, as in Mn.E., to emphasize the agent (the subject of the infinitive) rather than the action (the infinitive itself).

- 1 nytte tealde. þær genehost brægd [795]
 2 eorl Bēowulfes ealde lāfe,
 3 wolde frēa-drihtnes feorh ealgian,
 4 mǣres þeodnes, ðær hīe meahton swā.
 5 Hīe ðæt ne wiston, þā hīe gewin drugon,
 6 heard-hicgende hilde-męcgas, [800]
 7 ƿnd on healfa gehwone hēawan þohton,
 8 sǣwle sēcan: þone syn-scaðan
 9 ænig ofer eorðan irenna cyst,
 10 gūþ-billa nān, grētan nolde;
 11 ac hē sige-wǣpnum forsworen hæfde, [805]
 12 ęga gehwylcre. Scolde his aldor⁴-gedāl
 13 on ðām dæge ƿysses līfes
 14 earmlic wurðan⁵ ƿnd se ęllor-gāst
 15 on fēonda geweald feor sīðian.
 16 Þā þæt onfunde, sē þe fela æror [810]
 17 mōdes myrðe manna cynne
 18 fyrene gefrēmede (hē wæs fāg wið God),
 19 þæt him se līc-hƿna lǣstan nolde,
 20 ac hine se mōdega⁶ mæg Hygelāces
 21 hæfde be hƿnda; wæs gehwæper ððrum [815]
 22 lifigende lāð. Līc-sār gebād
 23 atol æglāca⁷; him on eaxle wearð

1-2. **þær** . . **lāfe**. Beowulf's followers now seem to have seized their swords and come to his aid, not knowing that Grendel, having forsworn war-weapons himself, is proof against the best of swords. *Then many an earl of Beowulf's (= an earl of B. very often) brandished his sword.* That no definite earl is meant is shown by the succeeding **hīe meahton** instead of **hē meahte**. See p. 110, Note.

5. *They did not know this (ðæt), while they were fighting;* but the first **Hīe** refers to the warriors who proffered help; the second **hīe**, to the combatants, Beowulf and Grendel. In apposition with **ðæt**, stands the whole clause, **þone synscaðan** (object of **grētan**) . . . **nolde**. The second, or conjunctive, **ðæt** is here omitted before **þone**. See p. 112, note on ll. 18-19.

- 1 syn-dolh sweotol; seonowe onsprungon;
 2 burston bān-locan. Bēowulfe wearð
 3 gūð-hrēð gyfeðe. Scolde Grendel þōnan [820]
 4 feorh-sēoc flēon under fēn-hleoðu,⁸
 5 sēcean wyn-lēas wīc; wiste þē geornor,
 6 þæt his aldres⁹ wæs ende gegongen,
 7 dōgera dæg-rīm. Denum eallum wearð
 8 æfter þām wæl-rāse willa gelumpen. [825]
 9 Hæfde þā gefælsod, sē þe ær feorran cōm,
 10 snotor ond swyð-ferhð, seþe Hrōðgāres,
 11 genēred wið nīðe. Niht-weorce gefeh,
 12 ellen-mærþum; hæfde Eāst-Denum
 13 Gēat-męga lēod gilp gelæsted; [830]
 14 swylce oncyððe ealle gebētte,
 15 inwid-sorge, þe hīe ær drugon
 16 ond for þrēa-nýdum poliam scoldon,
 17 torn unlytel. þæt wæs tācen sweotol,
 18 syððan hilde-dēor hōnd ālēgde, [835]
 19 earm ond eaxle (þær wæs eal geador
 20 Grendles grāpe) under gēapne hrōf.

¹ = ealdor-.

⁴ = ealdor-.

⁷ = āglæca.

² = Heorote.

⁵ = weorðan.

⁸ = -hliðu.

³ = hæftan.

⁶ = mōdiga.

⁹ = ealdres.

BEOWULF FATALLY WOUNDED. [Lines 2712-2752.]

[Hrothgar, in his gratitude for the great victory, lavishes gifts upon Beowulf; but Grendel's mother must be reckoned with. Beowulf finds her at the sea-bottom, and after a desperate struggle slays her. Hrothgar again pours treasures into Beowulf's lap. Beowulf, having now accomplished his mission, returns to Sweden. After a reign of fifty years, he goes forth to meet a fire-spewing dragon that is ravaging his kingdom. In the struggle Beowulf is fatally wounded. Wiglaf, a loyal thane, is with him.]

20. grāpe = genitive singular, feminine, after eal.

- 1 wunde wæl-blēate; wisse hē gearwe,
 2 þæt hē dæg-hwīla gedrogen hæfde
 3 eorðan wynne; þā wæs eall sceacen
 4 dōgor-gerīmes, dēað ungemete nēah:
 5 “Nū ic suna mīnum syllan wolde [2730]
 6 gūð-gewādu, þær mē gifeðe swa
 7 ænig yrfe-weard æfter wurde
 8 līce gelenge. Ic ðās lēode hēold
 9 fiftig wintra; næs se folc-cyning
 10 ymbe-sittendra ænig þāra, [2735]
 11 þe mec gūð-winum grētan dorste,
 12 egesan ðeon. Ic on earde bād
 13 mæl-gesceafta, hēold mīn tela,
 14 nē sōhte searo-nīðas, nē mē swōr fela
 15 āða on unriht. Ic ðæs ealles mæg, [2740]
 16 feorh-bennum sēoc, gefēan habban;
 17 for-þām mē wītan ne ðearf Waldend⁴ fīra
 18 morðor-bealo⁵ māga, þonne mīn sceaceð
 19 lif of līce. Nū ðu lungre geong⁶
 20 hord scēawian under hārne stān, [2745]
 21 Wīglāf lēofa, nū se wyrm ligeð,
 22 swefeð sāre wund, since berēafod.

says not a word about his wound. The context seems to me to show plainly that **ofer** (cf. Latin *supra*) denotes here opposition = *in spite of*. We read in *Genesis*, l. 594, that Eve took the forbidden fruit **ofer Drihtenes word**. Beowulf fears (l. 2331) that he may have ruled unjustly = **ofer ealde riht**; and he goes forth (l. 2409) **ofer willan** to confront the dragon.

6-8. **þær mē . . . gelenge**, if so be that (**þær . . . swā**) any heir had afterwards been given me (**mē gifeðe . . . æfter wurde**) belonging to my body.

19-20. **geong** [= **gong**] . . . **scēawian**. See note on **ēode . . . sittan**, p. 137, ll. 19-20. In Mn.E. *Go see, Go fetch*, etc., is the second verb imperative (coördinate with the first), or subjunctive (*that you may see*), or infinitive without *to* ?

- ¹ Bīo⁷ nū on ofoste, þæt ic ær-welan,
² gold-æht ongite, gearo scēawige
³ swegle searo-gimmas, þæt ic ðȳ sēft mæge [2750]
⁴ æfter mǣððum-welan mīn alǣtan
⁵ lif qnd lēod-scipe, þone ic lōnge hēold."

¹ = sēo.³ = Bēowulf.⁶ = gong (gang).² = gēong.⁴ = Wealdend.⁷ = Bēo.⁵ = morðor-bealu.

BEOWULF'S LAST WORDS. [Lines 2793-2821.]

[Wiglaf brings the jewels, the tokens of Beowulf's triumph. Beowulf, rejoicing to see them, reviews his career, and gives advice and final directions to Wiglaf.]

- ⁶ *Biowulf*¹ *maðelode*,
⁷ gomel on gioldē (gold scēawode):
⁸ "Ic þāra frætwa Frēan ealles ðanc, [2795]
⁹ Wuldur-cyninge, wordum sæge
¹⁰ ēcum Dryhtne, þe ic hēr on starie,
¹¹ þæs þe ic mōste mīnum lēodum
¹² ær swylt-dæge swyle gestrȳnan.
¹³ Nū ic on mǣðma hord mīne bebohte [2800]

4-5. **mīn** . . **lif**. See note on **ende-dæg** . . **mīnne**, p. 137, ll. 16-17.

8-12. The expression **sægan þanc** takes the same construction as **þancian**; i.e., the dative of the person (**Frēan**) and the genitive (a genitive of cause) of the thing (**þāra frætwa**). Cf. note on **biddan**, p. 45. The antecedent of **þe** is **frætwa**. For the position of **on**, see § 94, (5). The clause introduced by **þæs þe** (*because*) is parallel in construction with **frætwa**, both being causal modifiers of **sæge þanc**. The Christian coloring in these lines betrays the influence of priestly transcribers.

13. *Now that I, in exchange for (on) a hoard of treasures, have bartered (bebohte) the laying down (-lēge > licgan) of my old life.* The ethical codes of the early Germanic races make frequent mention of blood-payments, or life-barters. There seems to be here a suggestion of the "wergild."

- 1 frōde feorh-lege, frēmmað gē nū
 2 lēoda pearfe; ne mæg ic hēr leng wesan.
 3 Hātað heaðo-mære hlāw gewyrcean,
 4 beorhtne æfter bæle æt brimes nosan;
 5 sē scel² tō gemyndum mīnum lēodum [2805]
 6 hēah hlīfian on Hrōnes næsse,
 7 þæt hit sǣ-liðend syððan hātan³
 8 Bīowulfes¹ biorh¹ þā þe brentingas
 9 ofer flōða genipu feorran drīfað”
 10 Dyde him of healse hring gyldenre [2810]
 11 pīoden¹ prīst-hȳdig; þegne gesealde,
 12 geongum gār-wigan, gold-fāhne helm,
 13 bēah ƿnd byrnan, hēt hyne brūcan well.
 14 “þū eart ƿnde-lāf ūsses cynnes,
 15 Wægmondunga; ealle wyrd forswēop [2815]
 16 mīne māgas tō metod-sceafte,
 17 eorlas on ƿlne; ic him æfter sceal.”
 18 Þæt wæs þām gomelan gingeste word
 19 brēost-gehygdum, ær hē bæl cure,

1. **frēmmað gē**. The plural imperative (as also in **Hātað**) shows that Beowulf is here speaking not so much to Wiglaf in particular as, through Wiglaf, to his retainers in general, — to his *comitatus*.

6. The desire for conspicuous burial places finds frequent expression in early literatures. The tomb of Achilles was situated “high on a jutting headland over wide Hellespont that it might be seen from off the sea.” Elpenor asks Ulysses to bury him in the same way. Æneas places the ashes of Misenus beneath a high mound on a headland of the sea.

7. **hit = hlāw**, which is masculine. See p. 39, Note 2.

10–11. **him . . . pīoden**. The reference in both cases is to Beowulf, who is disarming himself (**to-of > doff**) for the last time; **þegne = to Wiglaf**.

Note, where the personal element is strong, the use of the dative instead of the more colorless possessive; **him of healse**, not **of his healse**.

17. **ic . . . sceal**. See note on **nō . . . meahste**, p. 140, l. 1.

1 hāte heaðo-wylmas; him of hreðre gewāt [2820]
 2 sǣwol sēcean sōð-fæstra dōm.

¹ io, io = ēo, eo.

² = sceal.

³ = hāten.

VII. THE WANDERER.

[Exeter MS. "The epic character of the ancient lyric appears especially in this: that the song is less the utterance of a momentary feeling than the portrayal of a lasting state, perhaps the reflection of an entire life, generally that of one isolated, or hereft by death or exile of protectors and friends." (Ten Brink, *Early Eng. Lit.*, I.) I adopt Brooke's three-fold division (*Early Eng. Lit.*, p. 356): "It opens with a Christian prologue, and closes with a Christian epilogue, but the whole body of the poem was written, it seems to me, by a person who thought more of the goddess Wyrd than of God, whose life and way of thinking were uninfluenced by any distinctive Christian doctrine."

The author is unknown.]

PROLOGUE.

3 Oft him ānhaga āre gebīdeð,
 4 Metudes¹ miltse, pēah þe hē mōðcearig
 5 geond lagulāde lōnge sceolde
 6 hrēran mid hōndum hrīmcealde sǣ,
 7 wadan wræclastas: wyrd bið ful āræd! [5]
 8 Swā cwæð eardstapa earfepa² gemyndig,
 9 wrāpra wælsleahta, winemæga hryres:

PLAINT OF THE WANDERER.

10 "Oft ic sceolde āna ūhtna gehwylce
 11 mīne ceare cwīpan; nis nū cwicra nān,

1. him of hreðre. Cf. note on him . . . þiōden, p. 147, ll. 10–11.

1–2. For construction of gewāt . . . sēcean, see note on ēode . . . sittan, p. 137, ll. 19–20.

9. The MS. reading is hryre (nominative), which is meaningless.

10. For ūhtna gehwylce, see note on cēnra gehwylcum, p. 140.

- 1 þe ic him mōdsefan mīnne durre [10]
 2 sweotule³ āseġan. Ic tō sōþe wāt
 3 þæt biþ in eorle indryhten þēaw,
 4 þæt hē his ferðlocan fæste binde,
 5 healde his hordeofan, hycge swā hē wille;
 6 ne mæg wērig mōd wyrde wiðstōndan [15]
 7 nē sē hrēo hyge helpe gefrēmmān :
 8 for ðon dōmgeorne drēorigne oft
 9 in hyra brēostcofan bindað fæste.
 10 Swā ic mōdsefan mīnne sceolde
 11 oft earmcearig ēðle bidæled, [20]
 12 frēomægum feor feterum sēlan,
 13 sippan gēara iū goldwine mīnne
 14 hrūsan heolster biwrah, and ic hēan þonnan
 15 wōd wintercearig ofer wapema gebind,
 16 sōhte seġe drēorig since's bryttan, [25]
 17 hwær ic feor oþpe nēah findan meahthe
 18 þone þe in meoduhealle* miltse wisse
 19 oþpe mec frēondlēasne frēfran wolde,
 20 wēnian mid wynnum. Wāt sē þe cunnað
 21 hū slīpen bið sorg tō gefēran [30]
 22 þām þe him lýt hafað lēofra geholena :
 23 warað hine wræclāst, nāles wunden gold,
 24 ferðloca frēorig, nālæs foldan blēd ;
 25 gemon hē selesēcgas and sineþeġe,
 26 hū hine on geoguðe his goldwine [35]
 27 wēnede tō wiste : wyn eal gedrēas !

1. **þe . . . him.** See § 75, (4).

18. For **mine** (MS. **in**), which does not satisfy metrical requirements, I adopt Kluge's plausible substitution of **miltse**; **miltse witan** = *to show (know, feel), pity*. The **myne wisse** of *Beowulf* (l. 169) is metrically admissible.

- 1 For þon wāt sē þe sceal his winedryhtnes
 2 lēofes lārewidum lōnge forþolian,
 3 ðonne sorg and slāp sƿmod ætgædre
 4 earmne ānhagan oft gebindað: [40]
 5 þinceð him on mōde þæt hē his mōndryhten
 6 clyppe and cysse, and on cnēo lēge
 7 hōnda and hēafod, swā hē hwilum ær
 8 in gēardagum giefstōles brēac;
 9 ðonne onwæcneð eft winelēas guma, [45]
 10 gesihð him bīforan fealwe wāegas,
 11 bapian brimfuglas, brædan fēpra,
 12 hrēosan hrīm and snāw hagle gemenged.
 13 Þonne bēoð þȳ hęfigran heortan þenne,
 14 sāre æfter swæsne; sorg bið geniwad; [50]
 15 þonne māga gemynd mōd geondhweorfeð,
 16 grēteð glīwstafum, georne geondscēawað.
 17 Sęga geseldan swinmað eft on weg;
 18 flēotendra ferð⁵ nō þær fela bringeð
 19 cūðra cwidegiedda; cearo⁶ bið geniwad [55]

1. The object of **wāt** is **þinceð him on mōde**; but the construction is unusual, inasmuch as both **þæt's** (**þæt** pronominal before **wāt** and **þæt** conjunctive before **þinceð**) are omitted. See p. 112, ll. 18-19.

5. **þinceð him on mōde** (see note on **him . . . þīoden**, p. 147). "No more sympathetic picture has been drawn by an Anglo-Saxon poet than where the wanderer in exile falls asleep at his oar and dreams again of his dead lord and the old hall and revelry and joy and gifts, — then wakes to look once more upon the waste of ocean, snow and hail falling all around him, and sea-birds dipping in the spray." (Gummere, *Germanic Origins*, p. 221.)

17-19. **Sęga . . . cwidegiedda** = *But these comrades of warriors* = those seen in vision] *again swim away* [= *fade away*]; *the ghost of these fleeting ones brings not there many familiar words*; i.e. he sees in dream and vision the old familiar faces, but no voice is heard: they bring neither greetings to him nor tidings of themselves.

- 1 pām þe sēndan sceal swīpe geneahhe
 2 ofer wapema gebind wērigne sefan.
 3 For þon ic geþencan ne mæg geond þās woruld
 4 for hwan mōdsefa mīn ne gesweorce,
 5 þonne ic eorla lif eal geondþence, [60]
 6 hū hī færlīce flet ofgēafon,
 7 mōdge maguþegnas. Swā þēs middangeard
 8 ealra dōgra gehwām drēoseð and fealleþ;
 9 for þon ne mæg weorþan wīs wer, ær hē āge
 10 wintra dæl in woruldrīce. Wita sceal gepyldig, [65]
 11 ne sceal nō tō hātheort nē tō hrædwyrde,
 12 nē tō wāc wiga nē tō wanhȳdig,
 13 nē tō forht nē tō fægen nē tō feohgīfre,
 14 nē nǣfre gielpes tō georn, ær hē geara cunne.
 15 Beorn sceal gebīdan, þonne hē bēot sprīceð, [70]
 16 oþ þæt collenferð cunne gearwe
 17 hwider hreþra gehygd hweorfan wille.
 18 Ongietan sceal glēaw hæle hū gæstlīc bið,
 19 þonne eall pisse worulde wela wēste stōndeð,
 20 swā nū missenlīce geond þisne middangeard [75]
 21 winde biwāune⁷ weallas stōndap,

10. **Wita sceal gepyldig.** Either **bēon** (**wesan**) is here to be understood after **sceal**, or **sceal** alone means *ought to be*. Neither construction is to be found in Alfredian prose, though the omission of a verb of motion after **sculan** is common in all periods of Old English. See note on **nō . . . meahhte**, p. 140.

20. **swā nū.** "The Old English lyrical feeling," says Ten Brink, citing the lines that immediately follow **swā nū**, "is fond of the image of physical destruction"; but I do not think these lines have a merely figurative import. The reference is to a period of real devastation, antedating the Danish incursions. "We might fairly find such a time in that parenthesis of bad government and of national tumult which filled the years between the death of Aldfrith in 705 and the renewed peace of Northumbria under Ceolwulf in the years that followed 729." (Brooke, *Early Eng. Lit.*, p. 355.)

- 1 hrīme bihrorene,⁸ hryðge þā ederas.
 2 Wōriað þā wīnsalo,⁹ waldend licgað
 3 drēame bidrorene¹⁰; duguð eal gecrōng
 4 wlōnc bī wealle: sume wīg fornōm, [80]
 5 fērede in forðwege; sumne fugel¹¹ opbær
 6 ofer hēanne holm; sunne sē hāra wulf
 7 dēaðe gedælde; sumne drēorighlēor
 8 in eorðscræfe eorl gehyðde:
 9 yþde swā þisne eardgeard ælda Scyppend, [85]
 10 op þæt burgwara breahmta lēase
 11 eald ęnta geweorc idlu stōdon.
 12 Sē þonne þisne wealsteal wīse gepōhte,
 13 and þis deorce lif dēope geondþenceð,
 14 frōd in ferðe¹² feor oft gemōn [90]
 15 wælsleahta worn, and þās word ācwið:
 16 'Hwær cwōm mearg? hwær cwōm mago¹³? hwær
 cwōm mǣppungya?
 17 hwær cwōm symbla gesetu? hwær sindon sēle-
 drēamas?
 18 Ēalā beorht bune! ēalā byrnwiga!
 19 ēalā pēodnes prym! hū sēo præg gewāt, [95]
 20 genāp under nihthelm, swā hēo nō wære!
 21 Stōndeð nū on lāste lēofre dugupe
 22 weal wundrum hēah, wrymlicum fāh:
 23 eorlas fornōmon asca þrȳpe,

17. **cwōm . . . gesetu.** Ettmüller reads **cwōmon**; but see p. 107, note on **wæs . . . þā īgland**. The occurrence of **hwær cwōm** three times in the preceding line tends also to hold **cwōm** in the singular when its plural subject follows. Note the influence of a somewhat similar structural parallelism in *seas hides* of these lines (*Winter's Tale*, IV, iv, 500–502):

"Not for . . . all the *sun* sees or
 The close *earth* wombs or the profound *seas* hides
 In unknown fathoms, will I break my oath."

- 1 wāpen wælgīfru, wyrd sēo mære ; [100]
 2 and þas stānhleopu¹⁴ stormas cnysað ;
 3 hrīð hrēosende hrūsan bindeð,
 4 wintres wōma, þonne wƿon cymeð,
 5 nīpeð nihtscūa, norþan onsendeð
 6 hrēo hæglfare hælepum on andan. [105]
 7 Eall is earfoðlic eorþan rīce,
 8 onwendeð wyrda gesceaft weoruld under heofonum :
 9 hēr bið feoh lāne, hēr bið frēond lāne,
 10 hēr bið mƿon lāne, hēr bið mæg lāne ;
 11 eal þis eorþan gesteal īdel weorpeð ! ' ' [110]

EPILOGUE.

- 12 Swā cwæð snottor on mōde, gesæt him sundor æt rūne.
 13 Til biþ sē þe his trēowe gehealdeð ; ne sceal nāfre his torn tō rycene
 14 beorn of his breōstum ācƿƿan, nempe hē ær þā bōte cunne ;
 15 eorl mid ƿlne gefremman. Wel bið þām þe him āre sēceð,
 16 frōfre tō Fæder on heofonum, þær ūs eal sēo fæstnung stondeð. [115]

¹ = Metodes.⁶ = cearu.¹¹ = fugol.² = earfopa.⁷ See bewāwan.¹² = ferhðe.³ = sweotole.⁸ See behrēosan.¹³ = magu.⁴ = medu-.⁹ = winsalu.¹⁴ = -hliðu.⁵ = ferhð.¹⁰ See bedrēosan.12. **gesæt** . . . **rūne**, *sat apart to himself in silent meditation.*15. **eorl** . . . **gefremman**. Supply **sceal** after **eorl**.

I. GLOSSARY.

OLD ENGLISH — MODERN ENGLISH.

[The order of words is strictly alphabetical, except that **ð** follows **t**. The combination **æ** follows **ad**.

Gender is indicated by the abbreviations, m. (= masculine), f. (= feminine), n. (= neuter). The usual abbreviations are employed for the cases, nom., gen., dat., acc., and instr. Other abbreviations are sing. (= singular), pl. (= plural), ind. (= indicative mood), sub. (= subjunctive mood), pres. (= present tense), pret. (= preterit tense), prep. (= preposition), adj. (= adjective), adv. (= adverb), part. (= participle), conj. (= conjunction), pron. (= pronoun), intrans. (= intransitive), trans. (= transitive).

Figures not preceded by § refer to page and line of the texts.]

A.

ā, *ever, always, aye*.

abbudisse, f., *abbess* [Lat. *abbatissa*].

ābēodan (§ 109), *bid, offer*; **him hæl ābēad** 138, 9 = *bade him hail, wished him health*.

ābreca (§ 120, Note 2), *break down, destroy*.

ābūgan (§ 109, Note, 1), *give way, start* [bow away].

ac, conj., *but*.

ācweðan (§ 115), *say, speak*.

ācȳðan (§ 126), *reveal, proclaim* [cūð].

ād, m., *funeral pile*.

adesa, m., *adze, hatchet*.

æ (**æw**), f., *law*.

ædre (**ēdre**), f., *stream, canal, vein*; **blōd ēdrum dranc** 139, 4 = *drank blood in streams* (instr.).

æfæstnis, f., *piety*.

æfen-ræst, f., *evening rest*.

æfen-spræc, f., *evening speech*.

æfæst (**æwfæst**), *law-abiding, pious*.

æfæstnis, see **æfæstnis**.

æfre, *ever, always*.

æfter, prep. (§ 94, (1)), *after*; **æfter ðæm**, *after that, there-after*; **æfter ðæm ðe**, conj., *after*.

æfter, adv., *after, afterwards*.

æghwā (§ 77, Note), *each, every*.

æghwīlc (§ 77, Note), *each, any*.

æglæca, see **āglæca**.

ægðer (**æghwæðer**, **āðer**) (§ 77, Note), *each, either*; **ægðer . . . ððer . . . ððer**, *either . . . or . . . or*; **ægðer ge . . . ge** (§ 95, (2)), *both . . . and*; **ægðerge . . . ge . . . ge**, *both . . . and . . . and*.

æht, f., *property, possession* [**āgan**].

ælc (§ 77), *each*.

ælde (**ielde**) (§ 47), m. pl., *men*; gen. pl., **ælda**.

ælmih̄tig, *almighty*.

æmetta, m., *leisure* [**empti-ness**].

ænig (§ 77), *any*; **ænige ðinga** 141, 22 = *for anything*. (See 140, 15, Note.)

ær, adv., *before, formerly, sooner*; **nō p̄ ær** 140, 1 = *none the sooner*; **æror**, comparative, *before, formerly*; **ærest**, superlative, *first*.

ær, conj. (§ 105, 2), *ere, before* = **ær ðæm ðe**.

ær, prep. with dat., *before (time)*; **ær ðæm ðe**, conj. (§ 105, 2), *before*.

ærcebisceop, m., *archbishop* [**Lat. archiepiscopus**].

ærendgewrit, n., *message, letter*.

ærendwreca (-**raca**), m., *mes-senger*.

ærest, adj. (§ 96, (4)), *first*.

ærnan (§ 127), *ride, gallop* [**iernan**].

ærra, adj. (§ 96, (4)), *former*.

ærwela, m., *ancient wealth*.

æsc, m., *ash, spear*; gen. pl., **asca**.

Æscesdūn, f., *Ashdown* (in Berkshire).

æstel, m., *book-mark* [**Lat. has-tula**].

æt (§ 94, (1)), *at, in*; with **leor-nian**, *to learn*, **geðicgan**, *to receive*, and other verbs of similar import, **æt** = *from*: 115, 18; 137, 8, etc.

ætberan (§ 114), *bear to, hand*.

ætgað(e)re, adv., *together*.

ætsteppan (§ 116), *step up, ad-vance*; pret. sing., **ætstōp**.

æðele, *noble, excellent*.

æðeling, m., *a noble, prince*.

Æðelwulfing, m., *son of Ethel-wulf*.

Æðered, m., *Ethelred*.

āfeallan (§ 117), *fall*.

āfierran (§ 127), *remove* [**feor**].

āgan (§ 136), *to own, possess*.

āgen, adj.-part., *own*; dat. sing., **āgnum** [**āgan**].

āgiefan (§ 115), *give back*.

āglæca (**æglæca**), m., *monster, champion*.

āhton, see **āgan**.

ālætan (§ 117), *let go, leave*.

aldor, see **ealdor**.

ālęcgan (§ 125, Note), *lay down* [**licgan**]; past part., **ālęd**.

Āliesend, m., *Redeemer* [**āliesan** = *release, ransom*].

ālimpan (§ 110), *befall, occur*.

ālȳfan (§ 126), *entrust, permit*.

ambor, m., *measure*; gen. pl., **ambra** (§ 27, (4)).

ambyre, *favorable*.

ān (§ 89), *one*; **āna**, *alone, only*;

ānra gehwylcum 141, 15 = *to each one*. (See 140, 15, Note.)

anda, m., *zeal, injury, indignation*; **hæleðum on andan** 153, 6 = *harmful to men*.

andēfn, f., *proportion, amount*.

andgiet (-**git**), n., *sense, meaning*.

andgitfullice, *intelligibly*; **-git-fullicost**, superlative.

andswaru, f., *answer*.

andwyrdan (§ 127), *to answer*; pret., **andwyrd**.

Angel, n., *Anglen* (in Denmark); dat. sing., **Angle** (§ 27 (4)).

Angelcynn, n., *English kin, English people, England*.

ānhaga (-hoga), m., *a solitary, wanderer* [**ān** + **hogian**, *to meditate*].

ānlipig, *single, individual*.

ānunga (§ 93, (2)), *once for all* [**ān**].

apostol, m., *apostle* [Gr. ἀπόστολος].

ār, f., *honor, property, favor*; **āre gebīdeð** 148, 3 = *waits for divine favor* (gen.).

āræd, adj., *inexorable*.

ārædan (§ 126), *read*.

ārecc(e)an (§ 128), *translate, expound*.

ārfaestnis, f., *virtue*.

ārīsan (§ 102), *arise*.

asca, see **aesc**.

āseccgan (§ 132), *say, relate*.

āseſttan (§ 127), *set, place*.

āsingan (§ 110), *sing*.

āspendan (§ 127), *spend, expend*.

āstigan (§ 102), *ascend, arise*.

āstōndan (§ 116), *stand up*.

ātēah, see **ātēon**.

atelīc, *horrible, dire*.

ātēon (§ 118), *draw, draw away, take* (as a journey).

atol, *horrible, dire*.

āttor, n., *poison*.

ātuge, see **ātēon**.

āð, m., *oath*.

āðer, see **ægðer**.

āweccan (§ 128), *awake, arouse*; pret. sing., **āweahte**, **āwehte**.

aweg, *away*.

āwēndan (§ 127), *turn, translate*.

āwritan (§ 102), *write, compose*.

āwyrca (§ 128), *work, do, perform*.

B.

Bāchseccg, m., *Bag sac*.

bæcbord, n., *larboard, left side of a ship*.

bæl, m., *funeral fire, funeral pile*.

bān, n., *bone*.

bān-fāg, *adorned with bones or antlers*.

bān-locā, m., *flesh* [bone-locker].

Basengas, m. pl., *Basing* (in Hantsire).

be (**bī**) (§ 94, (1)), *by, about, concerning, near, along, according to*; **be norðan þāem wēstenne** (§ 94, (4)), *north of the waste (desert)*; **be fullan**, *fully, perfectly*.

bēag, see **būgan**.

bēag-hroden, *ring-adorned*.

bēah (**bēag**), m., *ring, bracelet, collar* [**būgan**].

bealo-nið, m., *dire hatred, poison, venom*.

bearn, n., *child, son* [**bairn**].

bebēodan (§ 109), *command, bid, entrust* (with dat.).

bebīo-, see **bebēo-**.

bebohte, see **bebyccgan**.

bebyccgan (§ 128), *sell*.

bēc, see **bōc**.

becuman (§ 114), *come, arrive, befall*.

bedælan (§ 126), *separate, deprive*.

- bedrēosan** (§ 109), *deprive*; past part. pl., **bedrorene** (**bidrorene**) [*dross, dreary*].
- befæstan** (§ 127), *fasten, implant*.
- befēolan** (§ 110), *apply one's self*; **ðāra ðe ðā spēða hæbben ðæt hīe ðæm befēolan mægen** 119, 20 = *of those who have the means by which they may apply themselves to it*.
- beforan**, prep. with dat., *before*.
- bēgen** (declined like **twēgen**, § 89), *both*.
- begeondan** (**begiondan**), prep. with dat., *beyond*.
- begietan** (§ 115), *get, obtain, find*.
- beginnan** (§ 110), *begin*.
- beheonan** (**behionan**), prep. with dat., *on this side of*.
- behreōsan** (§ 109), *fall upon, cover*; past part. pl., **behrorene** (**bihrorene**).
- belimpan** (§ 110), *pertain, belong*.
- beniman** (§ 114), *take, derive*.
- bēnn**, f., *wound* [**bana** = *murderer*].
- bēon** (**bīon**) (§ 134), *be, consist*.
- beorh** (**beorg, biorh**), m., *mound* [*barrow*].
- beorht**, *bright, glorious*.
- Beormas**, m. pl., *Permians*.
- beorn**, m., *man, hero, chief*.
- bēor-þegu**, f., *beer-drinking* [**picgan** = *receive*].
- bēot**, n., *boast*.
- beran** (§ 114), *bear*.
- berēafian** (§ 130), *bereave; since* **berēafod** 145, 22 = *bereft of treasure*.
- beren**, adj., *of a bear, bear*.
- berstan** (§ 110), *burst, crack*.
- besmiðian** (§ 130), *make hard* (as at the forge of a smith).
- bēt**, see **wel** (§ 97, (2)).
- bētan** (§ 126), *make good, requite*; past part. pl., **gebētte**.
- bētera** (**bētra**), see **gōd** (§ 96, (3)).
- betlic**, *excellent*.
- bētsta**, see **gōd** (§ 96, (3)).
- betuh** (§ 94, (1)), *between*.
- betwēonan** (§ 94, (1)), *between*.
- betȳnan** (§ 126), *close, end* [**tūn** = *enclosure*].
- bewāwan** (§ 117), *blow upon*; past part. pl., **bewāune** (**biwāune, bewāwene**).
- bewrēon** (§ 118, 1), *enwrap*; pret. 3d sing., **bewrāh** (**biwrāh**).
- bī**, see **be**.
- bi-**, see **be-**.
- bīdan** (§ 102), *bide, await, expect, endure* (with gen.).
- biddan** (§ 115, Note 2), *bid, pray, request* (§ 65, Note 3); **bæd hine blīðne** 136, 7 = *bade him be blithe*.
- bindan** (§ 110), *bind*.
- bīo**, see **bēo** (imperative sing.).
- bisceop** (**biscep**), m., *bishop* [*Lat. episcopus*].
- bisceop-stōl**, m., *episcopal seat, bishopric*.
- bisigu**, f., *business, occupation*; dat. pl., **bisgum**.
- bītan** (§ 102), *bite, cut*.
- biwrāh**, see **bewrēon**.
- blæd**, m., *glory, prosperity* [**blāw-an** = *blow, inflate*].
- Blēcinga-æg**, f., *Blekingen*.
- bliss**, f., *bliss* [**blīðe**].
- blīðe**, *blithe, happy*.

blōd, n., *blood*.

bōc (§ 68, (1), Note 1), f., *book*.

bōcere, m., *scribe* [**bōc**].

bōna (**ba**na), m., *murderer* [**ba**ne].

bōt, f., *boot, remedy, help, compensation*.

brād (§ 96, (1)), *broad*.

brædan (§ 126), *extend, spread* [**brād**].

brædra, see **brād**.

brægd, see **bregdan**.

brēac, see **brūcan**.

breahm, m., *noise, revelry*;
burgwara breahma lēase 152,
10 = *bereft of the revelries of*
citizens.

bregdan (§ 110), *brandish, draw*
[**brād**]; pret. ind. 3d sing.,
brægd.

brenting, m., *high ship*.

brēost, n., *breast* (the pl. has the
same meaning as the sing.).

brēost-cofa, m., *breast-chamber*,
heart, mind.

brēost-gehygd, n., *breast-*
thought, thought of the heart,
emotion.

brim, n., *sea, ocean*.

brimfugol, m., *sea-fowl*.

bringan (§ 128), *bring*.

brōhte, **brōhton**, see **bringan**.

brōðor (**brōður**) (§ 68, (2)), m.,
brother.

brūcan (§ 109, Note 1), *use, en-*
joy (§ 62, Note 1; but Alfred
frequently employs the acc. with
brūcan).

brycg, f., *bridge*.

brȳcċ, see **brūcan**.

brytta, m., *distributor, dispenser*
[**brēotan** = *break in pieces*].

būan (§ 126, Note 2), *dwel, cul-*
tivate.

būde, see **būan**.

bufan, prep. with dat. and acc.,
above.

būgan (§ 109, Note 1), *bow, bend,*
turn.

bune, f., *cup*.

burg (**burh**) (§ 68, (1), Note), f.,
city, borough; dat. sing., **byrig**.

Burgenda, m. gen. pl., *of the*
Burgundians; **Burgenda land**,
Bornholm.

burgware (§ 47), m. pl., *burgh-*
ers, citizens.

burh, see **burg**.

būtan (**būton**), prep. (§ 94, (1)),
without, except, except for, but.

būtan (**būton**), conj., *except that,*
unless.

būtū, *both* (= *both — two*. The
word is compounded of the com-
bined neuters of **bēgen** and
twēgen, but is m. and f. as
well as n.).

bȳn (§ 126, Note 2), *cultivated*.

byrde, adj., *of high rank, aristo-*
cratic.

byrig, see **burg**.

byrne, f., *byrnie, corselet, coat of*
mail.

byrnwiga, m., *byrnie-warrior,*
mailed soldier.

byrð, see **beran**.

C.

canōn, m., *sacred canon, Bible*
[Lat. canon, Gr. κανών].

cearu (**cearo**), f., *care*.

ceaster-būend, m., *castle-dweller*.

cēne, *keen, bold, brave*.

cēosan (§ 109), *choose, accept, encounter.*

cild, n., *child.*

cirdon, see **cirran**.

cirice, f., *church*; nom. pl., **ciricean**.

cirr (**cierr**), m., *turn, time, occasion* [char, chore, ajar = on char, on the turn].

clæne, *clean, pure.*

clæne, adv., *entirely* ["clean out of the way," Shaks.].

clūdig, *rocky* [having boulders or masses like clouds].

clyppan (§ 127), *embrace, accept* [clip = clasp for letters, papers, etc.].

cnapa, m., *boy* [knave].

cnēo (**cnēow**), n., *knee*; acc. pl., **cnēo**.

cniht, m., *knight, warrior.*

cnyssan (§ 125), *beat.*

collenferð (**-ferhð**), *proud-minded, fierce.*

costnung, f., *temptation.*

Crēcas (**Crēacas**), m. pl., *Greeks.*

cringan (§ 110), *cringe, fall.*

Crīst, m., *Christ.*

Crīsten, *Christian*; nom. pl. m., **Crīstene**, **Crīstne**.

cuma, m., *new-comer, stranger.*

cuman (§ 114), *come.* (See p. 138, Note on ll. 2-6.)

cunnan (§ 137), *know, can, understand.*

cunnian (§ 130), *make trial of, experience* [**cunnan**].

cure, see **cēosan**.

cūð, *well-known, familiar* [past part. of **cunnan**: cf. **uncouth**].

cūðe, **cūðen**, **cūðon**, see **cunnan**.

cwæden, **cwædon**, see **cweðan**.

cwalu, f., *death, murder* [**cwelan**].

cwealm-cuma, m., *murderous comer.*

cwelan (§ 114), *die* [to quail].

cwēn, f., *queen.*

Cwēnas, m. pl., *a Finnish tribe.*

cweðan (§ 115), *say, speak* [quoth, bequeath].

cwic, *living, alive* [quicksilver; the quick and the dead].

cwidegiedd, n., *word, utterance* [**cweðan** and **gieddian**, both meaning *to speak*].

cwīðan (§ 126), *bewail* (trans.).

cwōm, see **cuman**.

cyle (**ciele**), m., *cold* [chill]; **cyle gewyrcan** 110, 7 = *produce cold, freeze.*

cyme, m., *coming* [**cuman**].

cyn(n), n., *kin, race.*

cyn(n), adj. (used only in pl.), *fitting things, etiquette, proprieties, courtesies*; **cynna gemyndig** 136, 3 = *mindful of courtesies.*

cynerīce, n., *kingdom.*

cynīng, m., *king.*

cyssan (§ 125), *kiss.*

cyst, f., *the choice, the pick, the best* [**cēosan**].

cȳðan (§ 126), *make known, display*, [**cūð**]; 2d sing. imperative, **cȳð**.

D.

dæd, f., *deed.*

dæg, m., *day.*

dæg-hwīl, f., *day-while, day*; **hē dæg-hwīla gedrogen hæfde eorðan wynne** 145, 2 = *he had spent his days of earth's joy.*

dæg-rīm, n., *number of days* [day-rime]; **dōgera dæg-rīm** 143, 7 = *the number of his days*.

dæl, n., *dale*.

dæil, m., *part, deal, division*.

dēad, *dead*.

dēað, m., *death*.

dēman (§ 126), *deem, judge*.

Denamearc, see **Denemearc**.

Dene (§ 47), m. pl., *Danes*.

Denemearc (**Denemearce**), f., *Denmark*; dat. sing., **Denemearce** (strong), **Denemearcan** (weak).

Denisc, *Danish*; **ðā Deniscan**, *the Danes*.

dēofol, m. n., *devil*; gen. sing., **dēofles** (§ 27, (4)).

dēope, *deeply, profoundly* [**dēop**].

dēor, n., *wild animal* [deer].

dēorc, *dark, gloomy*.

dōgor, n., *day*; gen. pl., **dōgora**, **dōgera**, **dōgra**.

dōgor-gerīm, n., *number of days, lifetime*.

dōm, m., *doom, judgment, glory*.

dōmgeorn, adj., *eager for glory* [*doom-yearning*].

dōn (§ 135), *do, cause, place, promote, remove*.

dorste, **dorston**, see **durran**.

drēam, m., *joy, mirth* [dream].

drēogan (§ 109), *endure, enjoy, spend* [Scotch dree].

drēorig, *dreary, sad*.

drēorighlēor, adj., *with sad face* [hlēor = *cheek, face, leer*].

drēosan (§ 109), *fall, perish* [dross].

drīfan (§ 102), *drive*.

drihten, see **dryhten**.

drincan (§ 110), *drink*.

drohtoð (-að), m., *mode of living, occupation* [**drēogan**].

drugon, see **drēogan**.

dryhten (**drihten**), m., *lord, Lord*; dat. sing., **dryhtne**.

dryht-sēle, m., *lordly hall*.

duguð, f., *warrior-band, host, retainers* [*doughtiness*]. In

duguð and **geogoð**, the higher (older) and lower (younger) ranks are represented, the distinction corresponding roughly to the mediæval distinction between knights and squires.

durran (§ 137), *dare*.

duru, f., *door*.

dyde, see **dōn**.

dynnan (§ 125), *resound* [din].

dyre (**dīere**, **dēore**, **dīore**), *dear, costly*.

E.

ēa, f., *river*; gen. sing., **ēas**; dat. and acc. sing., **ēa**.

ēac, also, *likewise* [a nickname = an eek-name. See § 65, Note 2]; **ēac swilce** (**swelce**) 112, 3 = *also*.

ēaca, m., *addition* [**ēac**]; **tō ēacan** = *in addition to* (§ 94, (4)).

ēage, n., *eye*.

eahta, *eight*.

ēalā, *oh! alas!*

ealað, see **ealu**.

eald (§ 96, (2)), *old*.

ealdor (**aldor**), n., *life*; **gif ðū ðæt ellenweorc aldre gedigest** 138, 17 = *if thou survivest that feat with thy life* (instr.).

ealdor-dæg (**aldor-**, **ealder-**), m., *day of life*.

ealdor-gedāl (aldor-), *n.*, *death* [life-deal].

ealdormōn, *m.*, *alderman, chief, magistrate.*

ealgian, (§ 130), *protect, defend.*

eall (eal), *all*; **ealne weg**, *all the way* (§ 98, (1)); **ealne** (<ealne weg), *always*; **ealles** (§ 98, (3)), *adv., altogether, entirely.* **Eall** (eal) is frequently used with partitive gen. = *all of*: 143, 19; 145, 3.

ealu (ealo) (§ 68), *n.*, *ale*; gen. sing., **ealað.**

ealu-scerwen, *f.*, *mortal panic* [ale-spilling].

eard, *m.*, *country, home* [eorðe].

eardgeard, *m.*, *earth* [earth-yard].

eardian (§ 130), *dwell* [eard].

eardstapa, *m.*, *wanderer* [earth-stepper].

ēare, *n.*, *ear.*

earfoð (earfeð), *n.*, *hardship, toil*; gen. pl., **earfeða.**

earfoðlic, *adj.*, *full of hardship, arduous.*

earm, *m.*, *arm.*

earn, *adj.*, *poor, wretched.*

earnmcearig, *wretched, miserable.*

earnlic, *wretched, miserable.*

earnung, *f.*, *merit* [earning].

ēast, *east.*

ēastan (§ 93, (5)), *from the east.*

Ēast-Dene (§ 47), *East-Danes.*

ēasteward, *eastward.*

ēastrihte (ēastryhte) (§ 93, (6)), *eastward.*

Ēastron, *pl.*, *Easter.*

ēaðe, *easily.*

ēaðmōdlice, *humbly.*

eaxl, *f.*, *shoulder* [axle].

Ebrēisc, *adj.*, *Hebrew.*

ēce, *eternal, everlasting.*

ęcg, *f.*, *sword* [edge].

edor, *m.*, *enclosure, dwelling*; nom. pl., **ederas.**

ēdrum, see **ædre.**

efne, *adv.*, *just, only* [evenly].

eft, *adv.*, *again, afterwards* [aft].

ęgesa, *m.*, *fear, terror* [awe].

ellen, *n.*, *strength, courage*; **mid ęlne** = *boldly*; **on ęlne** 147, 17 = *mightily, suddenly, or in their (earls') strength (prime).*

ellen-mærru, *f.*, *fame for strength, feat of strength.*

ellen-weorc, *n.*, *feat of strength.*

ellenwōdnis, *f.*, *zeal, fervor.*

ęllor-gāst, *m.*, *inhuman monster* [alien ghost].

ęln, *f.*, *ell* [el-bow].

ęlne, see **ellen.**

ęlra, *adj. comparative, another* [*ęle cognate with Lat. alius]; **on ęlran męn** 139, 14 = *in another man.*

emnlęng (-lang), *equally long*; **on emnlęnge** = *along* (§ 94, (4)).

ęnde, *m.*, *end.*

ęndebyrdnes, *f.*, *order.*

ęnde-dæg, *m.*, *end-day, day of death.*

ęnde-lāf, *f.*, *last remnant* [end-leaving].

ęngel, *m.*, *angel* [Lat. angelus].

Ęnglafeld (§ 51), *m.*, *Englefeld* (in Berkshire).

Ęngle (§ 47), *m. pl.*, *Angles.*

Ęnglisc, *adj.*, *English*; **on Ęnglisc** 117, 18 and 19 = *in English, into English.*

Ęngliscgereord, *n.*, *English language.*

ęnt, m., *giant*.

ęode, see **gęn**.

ęodorcan (§ 130), *ruminate*.

ęorl, m., *earl, warrior, chieftain*.

ęorlic, *earl-like, noble*.

ęorđ-draca, m., *dragon* [earth-drake].

ęorđe, f., *earth*.

ęorđ-reęed, n., *earth-hall*.

ęorđscręef, n., *earth-cave, grave*.

ęoten, m., *giant, monster*.

ęow, see **đū**.

Ęowland, n., *Öland* (an island in the Baltic Sea).

ęrian (§ 125), *plow* [to ear].

Estland, n., *land of the Estas* (on the eastern coast of the Baltic Sea).

Estmęre, m., *Frische Haff*.

Estum, dat. pl., *the Estas*.

etan (§ 115), *eat*.

ęttan (§ 127), *graze* [etan].

ęđel, m., *territory, native land* [allodial].

ęđel-weard, m., *guardian of his country*.

F.

fęc, n., *interval, space*.

fęder (§ 68, (2)), m., *father*.

fęgen, *fain, glad, exultant*.

fęger (fęger), *fair, beautiful*.

fęlsian (§ 130), *cleanse*.

fęrlıce, *suddenly* [fęr = fear].

fęst, *fast, held fast*.

fęste, adv., *fast, firmly*.

fęstnung, f., *security, safety*.

fęt, n., *vessel* [wine-fat, vat].

fętels, m., *vessel*; acc. pl., fętels.

fęđm, m., *embrace, bosom* [fathom = the space embraced by the extended arms].

fęg (fęh), *hostile*; **hę węs fęg wıđ God** 142, 18 = *he was hostile to God*.

fęh (fęg), *variegated, ornamented*.

Falster, *Falster* (island in the Baltic Sea).

fandian (§ 130), *try, investigate* [findan].

faran (§ 116), *go* [fare].

feallan (§ 117), *fall, flow*.

fealu, *fallow, pale, dark*; nom. pl. m., *fealwe*.

fęawe (fęa, fęawa), pl., *few*.

fela (indeclinable), *much, many* (with gen.).

feld (§ 51), m., *field*.

fell (fel), n., *fell, skin, hide*.

fęng, see **fōn**.

fęn-hliđ, n., *fen-slope*.

fęn-hop, n., *fen-retreat*.

feoh, n., *cattle, property* [fee]; gen. and dat. sing., **fęos**, **fęo**.

feohgıfre, *greedy of property, avaricious*.

feohtan (§ 110), *fight*.

fęol, see **feallan**.

fęond (§ 68, (3)), m., *enemy, fiend*.

fęond-gręp, f., *fiend-grip*.

feor (§ 96, (4)), adj., *far, far from* (with dat.).

feor, adv., *far, far back* (time).

feorh, m., n., *life*.

feorh-bęnn, f., *life-wound, mortal wound*.

feorh-leęu, f., *laying down of life*. (See p. 146, Note on l. 13.)

feorh-sęoc, *life-sick, mortally wounded*.

feorm (fiorm), f., *use, benefit* [food, provisions] [farm].

feormian (§ 130), *eat, devour.*

feorran, *from afar.*

fēowertig, *forty*; gen., **fēower-tiges** (§ 91, Note 1).

ferhð (**ferð**), m., *heart, mind, spirit.*

ferian (§ 125), *carry, transport* [to ferry]; **ferede in forðwege** 152, 5 = *carried away.*

fers, n., *verse* [Lat. *versus*].

fersc, *fresh.*

ferðloca (**ferhð-**), m., *heart, mind, spirit* [heart-locker].

fēt, see **fōt**.

fetor, f., *fetter* [**fōt**]; instr. pl., **feterum**.

feðer, f., *feather*; acc. pl., **feðra**.

fierd, f., *English army* [**faran**].

fiſ, *five.*

fiftiene, *fifteen.*

fiftig, *fifty*; gen. sing., **fiftiges** (§ 91, Note 1); dat. pl., **fiftegum** (§ 91, Note 3).

findan (§ 110), *find.*

finger, m., *finger.*

Finnas, m. pl., *Fins.*

fiorm, see **feorm**.

firas, m. pl., *men* [**feorh**]; gen. pl., **fira**; dat. pl., **firum**.

firrest (**fierrest**), see **feor** (§ 96, (4)).

first, m., *time, period.*

fiſcað (**fiſcnað**), m., *fishing.*

fiſcere, m., *fisherman.*

fiſcnað, see **fiſcað**.

flēon (§ 118, II.), *flee.*

flēotan (§ 109), *float.*

flēt, n., *floor of the hall.*

flōd, m., *flood, wave.*

folc, n., *folk, people.*

folc-cwēn, f., *folk-queen.*

folc-cyning, m., *folk-king.*

folcgefeocht, n., *folk-fight, battle, general engagement.*

fold-bold, n., *earth-building, hall.*

folde, f., *earth, land, country* [**feld**].

folm, f., *hand* [**fēlan** = *feel*].

fōn (§ 118), *seize, capture, take* [**fang**]; **tō riċe fōn** = *come to* (*ascend*) *the throne.*

for (§ 94, (1)), *for, on account of*; **for ðæm** (**ðe**), **for ðon** (**ðe**), *because*; **for ðon**, **for ðy**, **for ðæm** (**for-ðām**), *therefore.*

fōr, see **faran**.

forbærnan (§ 127), *burn thoroughly* [**for** is intensive, like Lat. *per*].

forgiefan (**-gifan**) (§ 115), *give, grant.*

forhergian (§ 130), *harry, lay waste.*

forhogdnis, f., *contempt.*

forht, *fearful, afraid.*

forhwæga, *about, at least.*

forlætan (§ 117), *abandon, leave.*

forlēt, **forlēton**, see **forlætan**.

forma, *first*; **forman sīðe**, *the first time* (instr.).

forniman (§ 114), *take off, destroy.*

forspendan (§ 127), *spend, squander.*

forstonðan (**-standan**) (§ 116), *understand.*

forswāpan (§ 117), *sweep away*; pret. 3d sing. indic., **forswēop**.

forswērian (§ 116), *forswear* (with dat.); past part., **for-sworen**.

forð, *forth, forward.*

forðolian (§ 130), *miss, go without* (with dat.) [not to *thole* or *experience*].

forðweg, m., *way forth*; **in forðwege**, *away*.

fōt (§ 68, (1)), m., *foot*.

Fræna, m., *Frene*.

frætwe, f. pl., *fretted armor, jewels* [fret].

fram, see **frqm**.

frēa, m., *lord, Lord*.

frēa-drihten, m., *lord, master*.

frēfran (§ 130), *console, cheer* [frōfor].

frēmde, *strange, foreign*; **ðā frēmdan**, *the strangers*.

frēmman (§ 125), *accomplish, perform, support* [to frame].

frēmsumnes (-nis), f., *kindness, benefit*.

frēo (frīo), *free*; gen. pl., **frēora** (frīora).

frēodōm, m., *freedom*.

frēolic, *noble* [free-like].

frēomæg, m., *free kinsman*.

frēond (§ 68, (3)), m., *friend*.

frēondlēas, *friendless*.

frēondlice, *in a friendly manner*.

frēorig, *cold, chill* [frēoran].

frīora, see **frēo**.

frīð, m., n., *peace, security* [bel-fry].

frōd, *old, sage, prudent*.

frōfor, f., *comfort, consolation, alleviation*; **fyrena frōfre** 137, 7 = *as an alleviation of outrages* (dat.).

frqm (**fram**) (§ 94, (1)), *from, by*.

frqm, adv., *away, forth*.

fruma, m., *origin, beginning* [frqm].

frumsceaft, f., *creation*.

fugela, see **fugol**.

fugelere, m., *fowler*.

fugol (**fugel**), m., *fowl, bird*; gen. pl., **fugela**.

ful, n., *cup, beaker*.

fūl, *foul*.

fūlian (§ 130), *grow foul, decompose*.

full (**ful**), adj., *full* (with gen.); **be fullan**, *fully, perfectly*.

full (**ful**) adv., *fully, very*.

fultum, m., *help*.

furðor (**furður**), adv., *further*.

furðum, adv., *even*.

fylð, see **feallan**.

fyren (**firen**), f., *crime, violence, outrage*.

fyrhtu, f., *fright, terror*; dat. sing., **fyrhtu**.

fyrst, adj., *superlative, first, chief*.

fýsan (§ 126), *make ready, prepare* [fūs = *ready*]; **gūðe gefýsed** 137, 9 = *ready for battle*.

G.

gād, n., *lack*.

gæst, see **gäst**.

gafol, n., *tax, tribute*.

galan (§ 116), *sing* [nightingale].

gālnes, f., *lust, impurity*.

gān (§ 134), *go*.

gār, m., *spear* [gore, gar-fish].

gār-wiga, m., *spear-warrior*.

gäst (**gæst**), m., *spirit, ghost*.

gästlic (**gæstlic**), *ghastly, terrible*.

ge, *and*; see **ægðer**.

gē, *ye*; see **ðū**.

geador, *together*.

geæmetigian (§ 130), *disengage from* (with acc. of person and gen. of thing) [*empty*].

geærnan (§ 127), *gain by running* [iernan].

gēap, *spacious*.

gēar, n., *year*; gen. pl., **gēara**, is used adverbially = *of yore, formerly*.

gēardæg, m., *day of yore*.

geare (**gearo**, **gearwe**), *readily, well, clearly* [yarely].

Gēat, m., *a Geat, the Geat* (i.e. Beowulf).

Gēatas, m. pl., *the Geats* (a people of South Sweden).

Gēat-mecgas, m. pl., *Geat men* (= the fourteen who accompanied Beowulf to Heorot).

gebēorscipe, m., *banquet, entertainment*.

gebētan (§ 126), *make amends for* [bōt].

gebīdan (§ 102), *wait, bide one's time* (intrans.); *endure, experience* (trans., with acc.).

gebīnd, n., *commingling*.

gebīndan (§ 110), *bind*.

gebrēowan (§ 109), *brew*.

gebrowen, see **gebrēowan**.

gebūd, **gebūn**, see **būan** (§ 126, Note 2).

gebyrd, n., *rank, social distinction*.

gecēosan (§ 109), *choose, decide*.

gecnāwan (§ 117), *know, understand*.

gecoren, see **gecēosan**.

gecringan (§ 110), *fall, die* [cringe].

gedælan (§ 126), *deal out, give*; **dēaðe gedælde** 152, 7 = *apportioned to death* (dat.), or, *tore (?) in death* (instr.).

gedafenian (§ 130), *become, befit, suit* (impersonal, usually with dat., but with acc. 112, 10).

gedīgan (§ 126), *endure, survive*.

gedōn (§ 135), *do, cause, effect*.

gedræg, n., *company*.

gedrēosan (§ 109), *fall, fail*.

gedriht (**gedryht**), n., *band, troop*.

gedrogen, see **drēogan**.

gedrync, n., *drinking*.

geendian (§ 130), *end, finish* (trans.).

gefaran (§ 116), *go, die*.

gefēa, m., *joy*.

gefeht, see **gefeohtan**.

gefeh, see **gefēon**.

gefēng, see **gefōn**.

gefeohtan (§ 110), *fight*.

gefēon (§ 118, v.), *rejoice at* (with dat.); pret. 3d sing., **gefeah**, **gefeh**.

gefēra, m., *companion, comrade* [co-farer].

geflieman (§ 126), *put to flight* [flēon].

gefohten, see **gefeohtan**.

gefōn (§ 118, vii.), *seize*.

gefōr, see **gefaran**.

gefræge, n., *hearsay, report*; **mīne gefræge** (instr.) 141, 7 = *as I have heard say, according to my information*.

gefremman (§ 125), *perform, accomplish, effect*.

gefultumian (§ 130), *help* [fultum].

gefylce, n., *troop, division* [folc]; dat. pl., **gefylcum**, **gefylcium**.

gefyllan (§ 127), *fill* (with gen.); past part. pl., f., **gefylda**.

geglengan (§ 127), *adorn*.

gehätland, n., *promised land* [gehätan = *to promise*].

gehealdan (§ 117), *hold, maintain*.

- gehieran** (*gehȳran*) (§ 126), *hear*.
- gehiersumnes**, *f.*, *obedience*.
- gehola**, *m.*, *protector* [*helan*].
- gehwā** (§ 77, Note), *each*; on **healfa gehwone** 142, 7 (see Note 140, 15. Observe that the pron. may, as here, be masc. and the gen. fem.).
- gehwæðer** (§ 77, Note), *each, either, both*.
- gehwylc** (*gehwilc*) (§ 77, Note), *each* (with gen. pl. See Note 140, 15).
- gehwyrfan** (§ 127), *convert, change*.
- gehȳdan** (§ 126), *hide, conceal, consign*.
- gehygd**, *f.*, *n.*, *thought, purpose*.
- gehȳran**, see **gehieran**.
- gehȳrnes**, *f.*, *hearing*; **eal ðā hē in gehȳrnesse geleornian meahste** 115, 14 = *all things that he could learn by hearing*.
- gelædan** (§ 126), *lead*.
- gelæred**, part.-adj., *learned*; superlative, **gelæredest**.
- gelafian** (§ 130), *lave*.
- gelenge**, *along of, belonging to* (with dat.).
- geleornian** (*-liornian*) (§ 130), *learn*.
- gelice**, *likewise*; *in like manner to* (with dat.).
- geliefan** (*gelȳfan*) (§ 126), *believe*; **ðæt hēo on ænigne eorl gelȳfde** 137, 6 = *that she believed in any earl*.
- gelimpan** (§ 110), *happen, be fulfilled*.
- gelimplic**, *proper, fitting*.
- gelȳfan**, see **geliefan**.
- gelȳfed**, *weak, infirm* [left (hand)].
- gēmdē**, see **gīeman**.
- gemet**, *n.*, *meter, measure, ability*.
- gemētan** (§ 126), *meet*.
- gemōn**, see **gemunan**.
- gemunan** (§ 136), *remember*; indic. pres. 1st and 3d sing., **gemōn**; pret. sing., **gemunde**.
- gemynd**, *n.*, *memory, memorial*; **tō gemyndum** 147, 5 = *as a memorial*.
- gemyndgian** (*-mynian*) (§ 130), *remember*; **mid hine gemyndgade** 115, 15 = *he treasured in his memory*; **gemyne mārðo** 138, 15 = *be mindful of glory* (imperative 2d sing.).
- gemyndig**, *mindful of* (with gen.).
- genāp**, see **genīpan**.
- geneahhe**, *enough, often*; **geneh-ost**, superlative, *very often*.
- genip**, *n.*, *mist, darkness*.
- genīpan** (§ 102), *grow dark*.
- genīwian** (§ 130), *renew*.
- genōh**, *enough*.
- genumen**, see **niman**.
- geoc**, *n.*, *yoke*.
- gēocor**, *dire, sad*.
- geogoð**, *f.*, *youth, young people, young warriors*. (See **ðuguð**.)
- geond** (*giond*) (§ 94, (2)), *throughout* [*yond*].
- geondhweorfan** (§ 110), *pass over, traverse, recall*; **ðonne māga gemynd mōd geondhweorfeð** 150, 15 = *then my mind recalls the memory of kinsmen*.
- geondscēawian** (§ 130), *survey, review*; **georne geondscēawað** 150, 16 = *eagerly surveys them*.

geondðenc(e)an (§ 128), *think over, consider*.

geong (§ 96, (2)), *young*; **gien-gest**, (*gingest*), superlative, *youngest, latest, last*.

geong = **gong**, see **gongan** (imperative 2d sing.).

gēong (**gīong**), see **gongan** (pret. 3d sing.).

georn (**giorn**), *eager, desirous, zealous, sure* [*yearn*].

georne, *eagerly, certainly*; **wiste ðē geornor** 143, 5 = *knew the more certainly*.

geornfulnes, f., *eagerness, zeal*.

geornlice, *eagerly, attentively*.

geornor, see **georne**.

geræcednes, f., *narration* [*reccan*].

gerisenlic, *suitable, becoming*.

gerȳman (§ 126), *extend*, (trans.) [*rūm*].

gesæliglic, *happy, blessed* [*silly*].

gesamnode, see **gesomnian**.

gesceaft, f., *creature, creation, destiny* [*scieppan*].

gesceap, n., *shape, creation, destiny* [*scieppan*].

gescioldan (§ 127), *shield, defend*.

gesealde, see **gesellan**.

geseglian (§ 130), *sail*.

geselda, m., *comrade*.

gesellan (§ 128), *give*.

gesēon (**gesion**) (§ 118), *see, observe*; pres. indic. 3d sing., **gesihð**.

geset, n., *habitation, seat*.

gesettan (§ 127), *set, place, establish*.

gesewen, see **sēon**, **gesēon** (past part.).

gesewenlic, *seen, visible* [*seen-like*].

gesiglan (§ 127), *sail*.

gesihð, see **gesēon**.

gesittan (§ 115, Note 2), *sit* (trans., as to *sit a horse, to sit a boat*, etc.); *sit, sit down* (intrans.).

geslægen, see **slēan** (§ 118).

gesomnian (§ 130), *assemble, collect*.

gesomnung, f., *collection, assembly*.

gestāh, see **gestigan**.

gestaðelian (§ 130), *establish, restore* [*standan*].

gesteal, n., *establishment, foundation* [*stall*].

gestigan (§ 102), *ascend, go* [*stīle, stirrup, sty* (= a rising on the eye)].

gestrangian (§ 130), *strengthen*.

gestrēon, n., *property*.

gestrȳnan (§ 126), *obtain, acquire* [*gestrēon*].

gesweorcan (§ 110), *grow dark, become sad*; **For ðon ic geðencan ne mæg geond ðās woruld for hwan mōdsefa mīn ne gesweorce** 151, 3-4 = *Therefore in this world I may not understand wherefore my mind does not grow "black as night."* (Brooke.)

geswican (§ 102), *cease, cease from* (with gen.).

getæl, n., *something told, narrative*.

getruma, m., *troop, division*.

geðanc, m., n., *thought*.

geðeah, see **geðicgan**.

geðenc(e)an (§ 128), *think, remember, understand, consider*.

geðeodan (§ 126), *join*.

geðeode (-ðeode), *n., language, tribe*.

geðeodnis, *f., association*; but in 112, 2 this word is used to render the Lat. *appetitus = desire*.

geðicg(e)an (§ 115, Note 2), *take, receive*; pret. indic. 3d sing., **geðeah**.

geðungen, part.-adj., *distinguished, excellent* [**ðeon**, to thrive].

geðyldig, *patient*.

geweald (**gewald**), *n., control, possession, power* [wield].

geweorc, *n., work, labor*.

geweorðian (§ 130), *honor* [to attribute worth to].

gewin(n), *n., strife, struggle*.

gewissian (§ 130), *guide, direct*.

gewitan (§ 102), *go, depart*.

geworht, geworhte, see **gewyr-can**.

gewrit, *n., writing, Scripture*.

gewunian (§ 130), *be accustomed, be wont*.

gewyrc(e)an (§ 128), *work, create, make, produce*.

giefan (§ 115), *give*.

giefstōl, *m., gift-stool, throne*.

giefu (**gifu**), *f., gift*.

gielp (**gilp**), *m., n., boast, boasting* [yelp].

giēman (**gēman**) (§ 126), *endeavor, strive*.

giēt (**giēt, gyt**), *yet, still*.

gif (**gyf**), *if* [not related to *give*].

gifeðe (**gyfeðe**), *given, granted*.

gifu, see **giefu**.

gilp, see **gielp**.

gilp-cwide, *m., boasting speech* [yelp-speech].

gingest, see **geong** (adj.).

glohðo (**gehðu**), *f., care, sorrow, grief*.

giū (**iū**), *formerly, of old*.

glæd (**glæd**), *glad*.

glēaw, *wise, prudent*.

glīwstæf, *m., glee, joy*; instr. pl. (used adverbially), **glīwstafum** 150, 16 = *joyfully*.

God, *m., God*.

gōd (§ 96, (3)), *good*; mid his **gōdum** 115, 12 = *with his possessions (goods)*.

godcund, *divine* [**God**].

godcundlice, *divinely*.

gold, *n., gold*.

gold-æht, *f., gold treasure*.

gold-fāh, *gold-adorned*.

gold-hroden, part.-adj., *gold-adorned*.

goldwine, *m., prince, giver of gold, lord* [gold-friend].

gomel (**gomol**), *old, old man*.

gongan (**gangan**) (§ 117), *go* [gang]; imperative 2d sing., **geong**; pret. sing., **gēong**, **gīong**, **gēng**; past part., **ge-gongen, gegangen**. The most commonly used pret. is **ēode**, which belongs to **gān** (§ 134).

Gotland, *n., Jutland* (in *Ohthere's Second Voyage*), *Gotland* (in *Wulfstan's Voyage*).

gram, *grim, angry, fierce, the angry one*.

grāp, *f., grasp, clutch, clasp*.

grētan (§ 126), *greet, attack, touch*.

grōwan (§ 117, (2)), *grow*.

gryre-lēoð, *n., terrible song* [grisly lay].

guma, *m., man, hero* [groom; see § 65, Note 1].

gūð, f., *war, battle*.

gūð-bill, n., *sword* [war-bill].

gūð-gewæde, n., *armor* [war-weeds].

gūð-hrēð, f., *war-fame*.

gūð-wine, m., *sword* [war-friend].

gyddian (§ 130), *speaking formally, chant* [giddy; the original meaning of *giddy* was *mirthful*, as when one sings].

gyf, see **gif**.

gyfeðe, see **gifeðe**.

gyldan (**gielðan**) (§ 110), *pay*; indic. 3d sing., **gylt**.

gylden, *golden* [gold].

H.

habban (§ 133), *have*.

hād, m., *order, rank, office, degree* [-hood, -head].

hæfta, m., *captive*.

hægel (**hagol**), m., *hail*; instr. sing., **hagle**.

hæglfaru, f., *hail-storm* [hail-faring].

hæle, see **hæleð**.

hæl, f., *hail, health, good luck*.

hæleð (**hæle**), m., *hero, warrior*.

hæt, see **hātan**.

hæðen, *heathen*.

Hæðum (æt **Hæðum**), *Haddeby* (= *Schleswig*).

hāl, *hale, whole*.

hālettan (§ 127), *greet, salute* [to hail].

Halfðene, *Halfðane* (proper name).

hālga, m., *saint*.

Hālgoland, *Halgoland* (in ancient Norway).

hālig, *holy*.

hālignes, f., *holiness*.

hām, m., *home*; dat. sing., **hāme**,

hām (p. 104, Note); used adverbially in **hām ēode** 112, 18 = *went home*.

hand, see **hond**.

hār, *hoary, gray*.

hāt, *hot*.

hātan (§ 117, Note 2), *call, name, command*; pret. sing., **heht**, **hēt**.

hātheort, *hot-hearted*.

hätte, see **hātan**.

hē, **hēo**, **hit** (§ 53), *he, she, it*.

hēafod, n., *head*.

hēah (§ 96, (2)), *high*; acc. sing. m., **hēanne**.

hēah-sele, m., *high hall*.

hēahðungen, *highly prosperous, aristocratic* [**hēah** + past part. of **ðeon** (§ 118)].

healdan (§ 117), *hold, govern, possess*; 144, 9 = *hold up, sustain*.

healf, adj., *half*.

healf, f., *half, side, shore*.

heall, f., *hall*.

heals, m., *neck*.

hēan, *abject, miserable*.

hēanne, see **hēah**.

heard, *hard*.

heard-hicgende, *brave-minded* [hard-thinking].

hearm-scaða, m., *harmful foe* [harm-scather].

hearpe, f., *harp*.

heaðo-dēor, *battle-brave*.

heaðo-mære, *famous in battle*.

heaðo-wylm, m., *flame-surge, surging of fire* [battle-welling].

hēawan (§ 117), *hew, cut*.

hēbban, **hōf**, **hōfon**, **gehafen** (§ 117), *heave, lift, raise*.

hefig, *heavy, oppressive.*

heht, see **hātan**.

helan (§ 114), *conceal.*

hell, f., *hell.*

helm, m., *helmet.*

Helmingas, m. pl., *Helmings*
(Wealtheow, Hrothgar's queen,
is a Helming).

help, f., *help.*

helpan (§ 110), *help* (with dat.).

heofon, m., *heaven.*

heofonlic, *heavenly.*

heofonrice, n., *kingdom of heaven.*

hēold, see **healdan**.

heolstor (-ster), n., *darkness,*
concealment, cover [holster].

heora (hiera), see **hē**.

heord, f., *care, guardianship*
[hoard].

heoro-drēorig, *bloody* [sword-
dreary].

Heorot, *Heorot, Hart* (the famous
hall which Hrothgar built).

heorte, f., *heart.*

hēr, *here, hither*; in the *Chronicle*
the meaning frequently is *at this*
date, in this year: 99, 1.

here, m., *Danish army.*

herenis, f., *praise.*

hergian (§ 130), *raid, harry,*
ravage [here].

hergung, f., *harrying, plundering.*

herian (herigean) (§ 125), *praise.*

hērsumedon, see **hīersumian**.

hēt, see **hātan**.

hider (hieder), *hither.*

hiera, see **hē**.

hīeran (hīran) (§ 126), *hear,*
belong.

hierde, m., *shepherd, instigator*
[keeper of a herd].

hierdebōc, f., *pastoral treatise*

[shepherd-book, a translation of
Lat. *Cura Pastoralis*].

hīerra, see **hēah**.

hīersumian (hīr-, hēr-) (§ 130),
obey (with dat.).

hige (hyge), m., *mind, heart.*

hige-ðihtig, *bold-hearted.*

hild, f., *battle.*

hilde-dēor, *battle-brave.*

hilde-mecg, m., *warrior.*

hilde-sæd, *battle-sated.*

hin-fūs, *eager to be gone* [hence-
ready].

hira, see **hē**.

hlāw (hlāw), m., *mound, burial*
mound [Ludlow and other place-
names, *low* meaning *hill*].

hlāford, m., *lord, master* [loaf-
ward?].

hleahtor, m., *laughter.*

hlēo, m., *refuge, protector* [lee].

hlifian (§ 130), *rise, tower.*

hlyn, m., *din, noise.*

hlynsian (§ 130), *resound.*

hof, n., *court, abode.*

hogode, see **hycgan**.

holm, m., *sea, ocean.*

hond (hand), f., *hand*; **on geh-**
wæðre hond, *on both sides.*

hord, m., n., *hoard, treasure.*

hordcofa, m., *breast, heart* [hoard-
chamber].

hors, n., *horse.*

horshwæl, m., *walrus.*

hrædwyrde, *hasty of speech*
[hræd = *quick*].

hrægel, n., *garment*; dat. sing.,
hrægle.

hrān, m., *reindeer.*

hraðe, *quickly, soon* [rath-er].

hrēo (hrēoh), *rough, cruel, sad.*

hrēosan (§ 109), *fall.*

hrēran (§ 126), *stir*.

hreðer, m., n., *breast, purpose*;
dat. sing., **hreðre**; gen. pl.,
hreðra.

hrīm, m., *rime, hoarfrost*.

hrīmceald, *rime-cold*.

hring, m., *ring, ring-mail*.

hrīð, f. (?), *snow-storm*.

hrōf, m., *roof*.

Hrones næss, literally *Whale's Ness, whale's promontory*; see **næss**.

hrūse, f., *earth* [**hrēosan**: deposit].

hryre, m., *fall, death* [**hrēosan**].

hryðer, n., *cattle* [*rinder-pest*].

hryðig, *ruined* (?), *storm-beaten*;
nom. pl. m., **hryðge**.

hū, *how*.

Humbre, f., *river Humber*.

hund, *hundred*.

hunig, n., *honey*.

hunta, m., *hunter*.

huntoð (-tað), m., *hunting*.

hūru, adv., *about*.

hūs, n., *house*.

hwā, **hwæt** (§ 74), *who ? what ?*

swā hwæt swā (§ 77, Note),
whatsoever; indefinite, *any one*,
anything; for **hwan** (instr.),
wherefore.

hwæl, m., *whale*.

hwælhunta, m., *whale-hunter*.

hwælhuntað, m., *whale-fishing*.

hwær, *where ? hwær . . . swā*,
wheresoever; **wel hwær**,
nearly everywhere.

hwæðer, *whether, which of the two ?*

hwēne, see **hwōn**.

hweorfan (§ 110), *turn, go*.

hwider, *whither*.

hwīl, f., *while, time*; **ealle ðā**

hwīle ðe, *all the while that*;

hwīlum (instr. pl.), *sometimes*.

hwīlc (**hwylic**, **hwelc**) (§ 74,
Note 1), *which ? what ?*

hwōn, n., *a trifle*; **hwēne** (instr.
sing.), *somewhat, a little*.

hwōnan, *when*.

hȳ, see **hīe**.

hycgan (§ 132), *think, resolve*;
pret. 3d sing., **hogode**.

hȳd, f., *hide, skin*.

hyge, see **hige**.

hyra (**hiera**), see **hē**.

hȳran, see **hīeran**.

hyrde, see **hierde**.

hys (**his**), see **hē**.

hyt (**hit**), see **hē**.

I.

ic (§ 72), *I*.

īdel, *idle, useless, desolate*.

ieldra, adj., see **eald**.

ieldra, m., *an elder, parent, ancestor*.

iernan (**yman**) (§ 112), *run*.

īglouð (**īgland**), n., *island*.

ilca (**ylca**), *the same* [of that ilk].

Ilfing, *the Elbing*.

in, *in, into* (with dat. and acc.);
in on, *in on, to, toward* (with
acc.).

inbryrðnis (-nes), f., *inspiration, ardor*.

indryhten, *very noble*.

ingong, m., *entrance*.

innan, adv., *within, inside*; **on
innau**, *within*.

innanbordes, adv.-gen., *within
borders, at home*.

inne, adv., *within, inside*.

intinga, m., *cause, sake*.

inweardlice, *inwardly, fervently*.
inwid-sorg (**inwit-sorh**), *f., sorrow caused by an enemy* [hostile sorrow].

Īreland, *n., Ireland* (but in *Ohthere's Second Voyage*, *Ice-land* is probably meant).

īren, *n., iron, sword*; *gen. pl., ĭrenna, ĭrena*.

īren-bend, *m., f., iron-band*.

īu, see **gīu**.

K.

kynerīce, see **cynērīce**.

kyning, see **cyning**.

kyrtel, *m., kirtle, coat*.

L.

Lǣden, *Latin*.

Lǣdengedēode (**-dēode**), *n., Latin language*.

Lǣdenware (§ 47), *m. pl., Latin people, Romans*.

lǣfan (§ 126), *leave*.

lǣge, see **licgan**.

Lǣland, *n., Laaland* (in Denmark).

lǣn, *n., loan*; **tō lǣne** 121, 2 = *as a loan*.

lǣne, *adj., as a loan, transitory, perishable*.

lǣran (§ 126), *teach, advise, exhort* [**lār**].

lǣssa, **lǣsta**, see **lȳtel**.

lǣstan (§ 127), *last, hold out* (intrans.); *perform, achieve* (trans.).

lǣtan (§ 117), *let, leave*.

lǣf, *f., something left, remnant, heirloom* (often a sword); **tō lǣfe**, *as a remnant, remaining*.

lagulād, *f., sea* [lake-way, **lād** = *leading, direction, way*].

land, see **lond**.

lang, see **lōng**.

Langaland, *n., Langeland* (in Denmark).

lār, *f., lore, teaching*.

lārcwide, *m., precept, instruction*, [**cwide** < **cweðan**].

lārēow, *m., teacher* [**lār** + **dēow**].

lāst, *m., track, footprint* [shoemaker's last]; **on lāst(e)**, *in the track of, behind* (with dat.).

lāð, *loathsome, hateful*.

lās, *loose, free from, bereft of* (with gen.).

lāsung, *f., leasing, deception, falsehood*.

lēcgan (§ 125, Note), *lay*.

lēfdon, see **lēfan**.

leger, *n., lying in, illness* [**licgan**].

lēng, see **lōnge**.

lēngra, see **lōng**.

lēod, *m., prince, chief*.

lēod, *f., people, nation* (the plural has the same meaning).

lēod-scipe, *m., nation* [people-ship].

lēof, *dear* [**lief**].

leoht, *adj., light*.

lēoht, *n., light, brightness*.

leornere, *m., learner, disciple*.

leornian (§ 130), *learn*.

leornung (**liornung**), *f., learning*.

lēoð, *n., song* [lay ?].

lēoðcræft, *m., poetic skill* [lay-craft].

lēoðsong, *n., song, poem*.

lēt, see **lǣtan**.

libban (§ 133), *live*; *pres. part., lifigende, living, alive*.

līc, n., *body, corpse* [lich-gate, Lichfield].
licgan (§ 115, Note 2), *lie, extend, flow, lie dead*; 3d sing. indic. pres., **ligeð**; **līð**.
līchama (-hōma), m., *body* [body-covering].
līcian (§ 130), *please* (with dat.) [like].
līc-sār, n., *body-sore, wound in the body*.
līefan (**lēfan**) (§ 126), *permit, allow* (with dat.) [grant leave to].
līf, n., *life*.
līf-dagas, m. pl., *life-days*.
litigende, see **libban**.
līg, m., *flame, fire*.
ligeð, see **licgan**.
lim, n., *limb*.
list, f., *cunning*; dat. pl., **listum**, is used adverbially = *cunningly*.
līð, see **licgan**.
lof, m., *praise, glory*.
lōnd (**land**), n., *land, country*.
lōng (**lang**) (§ 96, (2)), *long*.
lōnge (**lange**) (§ 97, (2)), *long*; **lōnge on dæg**, *late in the day*.
lufan, see **lufu**.
lufian (**lufigean**) (§ 131), *love*.
luflice, *lovingly*.
lufu, f., *love*; dat. sing. (weak), **lufan**.
lungre, *quickly*.
lust, m., *joy* [lust]; **on lust**, *joyfully*.
lȳt, indeclinable, *little, few* (with partitive gen.).
lȳtel (**lītel**) (§ 96, (2)), *little, small*.
M.
mā, see **micle** (§ 97, (2)).

mæg, see **magan**.
mæg, m., *kinsman*; nom. pl., **māgas** (§ 27, (2)).
mægen, n., *strength, power* [might and main].
mægen-ellen, n., *main strength, mighty courage*.
mægð, f., *tribe*.
mægðhād, m., *maidenhood, virginity*.
mælgescraft, f., *appointed time* [mælg = meal, time].
mæran (§ 126), *make famous, honor*.
mære, *famous, glorious, notorious*.
mærdō (**mærdō**, **mærd**), f., *glory, fame*.
mæsseprēost, m., *mass-priest*.
mæst, see **micel**.
magan (§ 137), *be able, may*.
māgas, see **mæg**.
magu (**mago**), m., *son, man*.
maguðegn, m., *vassal, retainer*.
man(n), see **mōn(n)**.
mancus, m., *mancus, half-crown*; gen. pl., **mancessa**.
māndæd, f., *evil deed*.
manig, see **mōnig**.
manigfeald, see **mōnigfeald**.
māra, see **micel**.
maðelian (§ 130), *harangue, speak*.
māðum (**māðūm**), m., *gift, treasure, jewel*; gen. pl., **māðma**.
māðūmgyfa, m., *treasure-giver, lord*.
māðūm-wela, m., *wealth of treasure*.
mē, see **ic**.
meaht, f., *might, power*.
meahte, see **magan**.

- mearc**, *f.*, boundary, limit [mark, march].
mearg (**mearh**), *m.*, horse; *nom.* pl., **mēaras**.
mearð, *m.*, marten.
mec, see **ic**.
medmicel, *moderately large, short, brief*.
medu (**medo**), *m.*, mead.
medu-benc, *f.*, mead-bench.
medu-ful, *n.*, mead-cup.
medu-heall, *f.*, mead-hall.
męn, see **męn(n)**.
męgan (§ 127), *mingle, mix*.
męnig (**męnigeo**), *f.*, multitude [many].
męnniscnes, *f.*, humanity, incarnation [man].
meolc, *f.*, milk.
Mēore, *Möre* (in Sweden).
męre, *m.*, lake, mere, sea [mermaid].
Meretūn, *m.*, Merton (in Surrey).
mętan (§ 126), *meet, find*.
Metod (**Meotod**, **Metud**), *m.*, Creator, God.
metod-sceaft, *f.*, appointed doom, eternity.
micel (§ 96, (3)), *great, mighty, strong, large* [mickle]; **māra**, *more, stronger, larger*.
micle (**micele**), *greatly, much*.
miclum, (§ 93, (4)), *greatly*.
mid, *with, amid, among* (with *dat.* and *acc.*).
middangeard, *m.*, earth, world [middle-yard].
middeweard, *midward, toward the middle*.
Mierce, *m. pl.*, Mercians.
mihte, see **magan**.
mīl, *f.*, mile [Lat. mille].
- mildheortnes**, *f.*, mild-heartedness, mercy.
milts, *f.*, mildness, mercy.
mīn (§ 76), *my, mine*.
mīslīc, *various*.
missenlīc, *various*.
mōd, *n.*, mood, mind, courage.
mōdcearig, *sorrowful of mind*.
mōdega, **mōdga**, see **mōdig**.
mōdgeðanc, *m.*, purpose of mind.
mōdig, *moody, brave, proud*.
mōdor, *f.*, mother.
mōdsefa, *m.*, mind, heart.
męn(n) (**man**, **mann**) (§ 68; § 70, Note), *m.*, man, one, person, they.
mōna, *m.*, moon.
mōnað (§ 68, (1), Note), *m.*, month [mōna]; *dat. sing.*, **mōnðe**.
męn(n)cynn, *n.*, mankind.
męndryhten, *m.*, liege lord.
męnian (**manian**) (§ 130), *admonish*.
męnig (**manig**, **męneg**, **męnig**), *many*.
męnigfeald (**manig-**), *manifold, various*.
mōnðe, see **mōnað**.
mōr, *m.*, moor.
morgen, *m.*, morning; *dat. sing.*, **morgen(n)e**.
morðor-bealu (**-bealo**), *n.*, murder [murder-bale]; see **ðurfan**.
mōste, see **mōtan**.
mōtan (§ 137), *may, be permitted, must*.
mund-gripe, *m.*, hand-grip.
munc, *m.*, monk [Lat. monachus].
munuchād, *m.*, monkhood, monastic rank.

mūð, m., *mouth*.

myntan (§ 127), *be minded, intend*; pret. indic. 3d sing., **mynte**.

mynster, n., *monastery* [Lat. *monasterium*]; dat. sing., **mynstre**.

mýre, f., *mare* [**mearh**].

myrð, f., *joy, mirth*; **mōdes myrðe** 142, 17 = *with joy of heart*.

N.

nā (**nō**), *not* [**ne ā** = *n-ever*]; **nā ne**, *not, not at all*.

nabban (p. 32, Note), *not to have*.

næðre, f., *serpent, adder*.

næfde, see **nabban**.

næfre, *never*.

nænig (§ 77), *no one, no, none*.

nære, **næren**, **næron**, see § 40, Note 2.

næs = **ne wæs**, see § 40, Note 2.

næss, m., *ness, headland*.

nāht, see **nōht**.

nālæs (**nāles**), *not at all* [**nā ealles**].

nam, see **niman**.

nama, see **noma**.

nāmon, see **niman**.

nān, *not one, no, none* [**ne ān**].

nānwuht, n., *nothing* [**no whit**].

ne, *not*.

nē, *nor*; **nē . . . nē**, *neither . . . nor*.

nēah (§ 96, (4)), *near*.

nēah, adv., *nigh, near, nearly, almost*; comparative, **nēar**, *nearer*.

neah, see **niht**.

nēalēcan (**-læcan**) (§ 126), *draw near to, approach* (with dat.).

nēar, see **nēah**, adv.

nēat, n., *neat, cattle*.

nemnan (§ 127), *name*.

nemðe, (**nymðe**), *except, unless*.

nerian (§ 125), *save, preserve*.

nēten, see **nīeten**.

nīedbeðearf, *needful, necessary*.

nīehst, see **nēah** (§ 96, (4)).

nīeten (**nēten**), n., *neat, beast, cattle*.

nigontiene, *nineteen*.

niht (**neaht**) (§ 68, (1), Note), *night*.

nihthelm, m., *night-helm, shade of night*.

nihtscūa, m., *shadow of night*.

niht-weorc, n., *night-work*.

niman (§ 114), *take, gain* [*nimble, numb*].

nīpan (§ 102), *grow dark, darken*.

nis, see § 40, Note 2.

nīð, m., *malice, violence*.

nīwe, *new, novel, startling*.

nō, see **nā**.

nōht (**nāht**, **nā-wiht**), n., *not a whit, naught, nothing*; *not, not at all*.

nōhwæðer (**nāhwæðer**), *neither*;

nōhwæðer nē ne . . nē

. . ne 118, 8 = *neither . . nor*.

noðe, **noldon** = **ne wolde**, **ne woldon**, see **willan**.

noma (**nama**), m., *name*.

norð (§ 97, (1)), *north, in the north, northwards*.

norðan (§ 93, (5)), *from the north*;

be norðan, see § 94, (4).

Norð-Dene, m. pl., *North-Danes*.

norðewearð, *northward*.

Norðhymbre, m. pl., *Northumbrians*.

Norðmanna, see **Norðmōn**.

Norðmen, see **Norðmön**.

norðmest, see **norð**.

Norðmön (-man) (§ 68, (1)),
Norwegian.

norðor, see **norð**.

norðryhte, *northward*.

norðweard, *northward*.

Norðweg, *Norway*.

nose, f., *cape, naze* [ness, nose].

notu, f., *office, employment*.

nū, *now; now that, seeing that*;

nū ðā 138, 13 = *now then*.

nȳhst (**nīehst**), see **nēah**.

nymðe, see **nemðe**.

nysse, see **nytan**.

nyste, see **nytan**.

nyt(t), *useful, profitable*.

nytan (**nitan** < **ne witan**, § 136),
not to know; 3d sing. pret.,
nysse, **nyste**.

O.

of (§ 94, (1)), *of, from, concern-*
ing.

ofer (§ 94, (2)), *over, across, after,*
in spite of (see 144, 14); **ofer**
eorðan 142, 9 = *on earth*.

ofer, adv., *over, across*.

oferfēran (§ 126), *go over, trav-*
erse.

oferfrēosan (§ 109), *freeze over*.

oferfrozen, see **oferfrēosan**.

ofgiefan (§ 115), *give up, relin-*
quish.

ofpst, f., *haste*.

ofslægen, see **ofslēan**.

ofslēan (§ 118), *slay off, slay*.

ofslōge, see **ofslēan**.

oft, *oft, often*; superlative, **oftost**.

on (§ 94, (3)), *in, into, on, against,*
to, among, during; **on fif oððe**

syx 109, 6 = *into five or six*
parts; **on weg** 140, 10 = *away*;
on innan 144, 5 = *within*; **on**
unriht 145, 15 = *falsely*.

onbærnan (§ 126), *kindle, inspire*.

oncȳðð, f., *distress, suffering*.

ond (**and**), *and*.

ondsaca, m., *adversary*.

ondswarian (§ 130), *answer*.

ondweard, adj., *present*.

onfēng, see **onfōn**.

onfeohtan (§ 110), *fight*.

onfindan (§ 110), *find out, dis-*
cover; pret. indic. 3d sing.,
onfunde.

onfōn (§ 118), *receive, seize vio-*
lently.

onfunde, see **onfīndan**.

ongēan, prep., *against, towards*
(with dat. and acc.).

ongēan, adv., *just across, opposite*.

Ūngelcynn (**Angel-**), n., *Angle*
kin, English people, England.

Ūngelðeod (**Angel-**), f., *the Eng-*
lish people or nation.

ongemang (-**mōng**), *among* (with
dat.).

ongietan (-**gitan**) (§ 115), *per-*
ceive, see, understand.

onginnan (§ 110), *begin, attempt*.

onlūtan (§ 109), *bow, incline*
(intrans.) [lout = a steeper].

onriðan (§ 102), *ride against,*
make a raid on.

onsendan (§ 127), *send*.

onslæpan (**onslēpan**) (§ 126),
fall asleep, sleep.

onspōnnan (§ 117), *loosen* [un-
span]; pret. 3d sing. indic.,
onspēon.

onspringan (§ 110), *spring apart,*
unspring.

onstāl, m., *institution, supply*.
 onstēllan (§ 128), *establish*; pret.
 3d sing. indic., *onstealde*.
 onwæcnan (§ 127), *awake* (in-
 trans.).
 onweald (-wald), m., *power*,
authority [wield].
 onwēndan (§ 127), *change, over-*
turn [to wind].
 ōr, n., *beginning*.
 oð (§ 94, (2)), *until, as far as*
(of time and place); oð ðæt,
 oð ðe, *until*.
 oðberan (§ 114), *bear away*.
 oððer, *other, second*; oððer . . .
 oððer, *the one . . . the other*.
 oðfæstan (§ 127), *set to (a task)*.
 oðfeallan (§ 117), *fall off, decline*.
 oððe, or; oððe . . . oððe, *either*
 . . . or.

P.

plega, m., *play, festivity*.
 port, m., *port* [Lat. portus].

R.

rād, f., *raid*.
 ræcan (§ 126), *reach*; pret. 3d
 sing., *ræhte*.
 ræst, see *reſt*.
 Rēadingas, m. pl., *Reading* (in
 Berkshire).
 reccan (§ 128), *narrate, tell*;
 pret. pl. indic., *rehton, reahton*.
 reccslēas, *reckless, careless*.
 reċed, n., *house, hall*.
 regnian (rēnian) (§ 130), *adorn*,
prepare; past part., *geregnad*.
 regollic (-lec), *according to rule*,
regular.
 rēn-weard, m., *mighty warden*,
guard, champion.

reſt (ræst), f., *rest, resting-place*,
bed.
 rēðe, *fierce, furious*.
 riċe, *rich, powerful, aristocratic*.
 riċe, n., *realm, kingdom* [bishop-
 ric].
 riċsian (§ 130), *rule*.
 riðan (§ 102), *ride*.
 riċman (§ 126), *count* [rime].
 rinc, m., *man, warrior*.
 rōd, f., *rood, cross*; rōde tācen,
sign of the cross.
 Rōmware, m. pl., *Romans*.
 rōnd (rand), m., *shield*.
 rūn, f., *rune, secret meditation*
 [to round = to whisper].
 rycene (ricene), *quickly, rashly*.
 ryhtnorðanwind, m., *straight*
north-wind.

S.

sæ, f., *sea*.
 sæ-bāt, m., *sea-boat*.
 sæd, n., *seed*.
 sæde, see *seċgan*.
 sæl, m. f., *time, happiness* [sil-ly];
 on sælum 137, 22 = *joyous*,
merry.
 sælan (§ 126), *bind*.
 sæ-līðend (§ 68, (3)), m., *sea-*
farer (nom. and acc. pl. same as
 nom. and acc. sing.).
 sam . . . sam, *whether . . . or*.
 same, *similarly*; swā same, *just*
the same, in like manner.
 samod, see *somod*.
 sanct, m., f., *saint* [Lat. sanctus];
 gen. sing., *sanctæ*, f., *sancti*, m.
 sang, see *song*.
 sār, f., n., *sore, pain, wound*.
 sār, adj., *sore, grievous*.
 sære, *sorely*.

sāwan (§ 117,) *sow*.

sāwol, f., *soul*; oblique cases, sing., **sāwle** (§ 39, Note).

scacan (**sceacan**) (§ 116), *shake, go, depart*; past part., **scacen**, **sceacen**.

scadu-helm, m., *cover of night, shadow-covering* [shadow-helm]; **scadu-helma gesceapu**, see Note on 138, 2-6.

sceal, see **sculan**.

scēap, n., *sheep*.

scēat, m., *corner, region, quarter* [sheet]; **eorðan scēatta** 139, 14 = *in the regions of earth* (gen. used as locative).

scēawi(g)an (§ 130), *view*, see [shew].

scēawung, f., *seeing*.

sceolde, see **sculan**.

scēop (**scōp**), see **scieppan**.

scēowyrhta, m., *shoe-maker*.

scēððan (§ 116), *injure, scathe* (with dat.).

scieppan (§ 116), *create*.

Scieppend, m., *Creator*.

scīnan (§ 102), *shine*.

scip (**scyp**), n., *ship*.

scipen, n., *stall*.

sciprāp, m., *ship-rope, cable*.

scīr, f., *shire, district*.

Sciringeshēal, m., *Sciringeskeal* (in Norway).

scolde, see **sculan**.

scōmu, f., *shame, dishonor*.

Scōnēg, f., *Skaane* (southern district of the Scandinavian peninsula).

scopgereord, n., *poetic language*.

scriðan (§ 102), *stride, stalk*.

sculan (§ 136; § 137, Note 2), *shall, have to, ought*.

Scyldingas, m. pl., *Scyldings, Danes*.

scyp, see **scip**.

Scyppend, see **Scieppend**.

sē, sēo, ðæt (§ 28; § 28, Note 3), *the; that; he, she, it; who, which, that; ðæs, from then, afterwards, therefore; ðæs ðe* (p. 110, l. 2), *with what; ðy . . . ðæt* (p. 110, ll. 7-8), *for this reason . . . because; tō ðæm swā, to such an extent . . . as; ðy (ðē), the* (adverbial, with comparatives); **ðy . . . ðy, the . . . the**.

seah, see **sēon**.

sealde, see **sēllan**.

searo-gimm, m., *artistic gem, jewel*.

searo-nið, m., *cunning hatred, plot*.

searo-ðonc, m., *cunning thought, device*.

Seaxe, m. pl., *Saxons, Saxony*.

sēc(e)an (§ 128), *to seek, visit, meet*.

sēcg, m., *man, warrior*.

sēcgan (§ 132), *say, tell*.

sefa, m., *mind, spirit*.

sēfte, *more easily* (comparative of **sōfte**).

segel, m., n., *sail*; dat. sing. = **segle**.

seglian (§ 130), *sail*.

sēle, m., *hall*.

sēledrēam, m., *hall joy, festivity*.

sēle-ful, n., *hall cup*.

sēlesēcg, m., *hall warrior, retainer*.

sēlest, *best* (no positive).

self (**sylf**), *self, himself* (declined as strong or weak adjective).

- sęllan (syllan)** (§ 128), *give* [sell, han(d)sel].
seþninga, *forthwith, straightway*.
seþdan (§ 127), *send*.
sęo, see **sę**.
sęoc, *sick*.
seofon (syfan), *seven*.
seolh, m., *seal*; gen. sing. = **sęoles** (§ 27, (3)).
sęon (§ 118), *see, look*.
seonu, f., *sinew*; nom. pl., **seonowe**.
sess, m., *seat*.
sibb, f., *friendship, peace* [gossip].
sidu (siodu), m., *custom, morality, good conduct*.
sie, see **bęon**.
siex, *six*; **syxa (siexa)** *sum*, see *sum*.
siextig, *sixty*.
sige, m., *victory*.
sige-folc, n., *victorious people*.
sige-lęas, *victory-less, of defeat*.
sige-rōf, *victory-famed, victorious*.
sige-wępen, n., *victory-weapon*.
siglan (§ 127), *sail*.
Sillende, *Zealand*.
sinc, n., *treasure, prize*.
sinc-fęet, n., see 137, 1 [treasure-vat].
sinc-đęegu, f., *receiving of treasure* [đicgan].
sind, sint, sindon, see **bęon**.
singan (§ 110), *sing*.
sittan (§ 115, Note 2), *sit, take position*.
siđ, m., *journey, time*; **forman siđe** 139, 2 = *the first time* (instr. sing.).
siđian (§ 130), *journey*.
siđđan, *after that, afterwards, after*.
slęp, m., *sleep*.
slępan (§ 117), *sleep*.
slęan (§ 118), *slay* [slow-worm].
slitan (§ 102), *slit, tear to pieces*.
slidęen, *savage, perilous*.
smęel, *narrow*.
smalost, see **smęel**.
snęw, m., *snow*.
snot(t)or, *wise, prudent*.
sōhte, see **sęcan**.
sqmod (samod), *together*.
sōna, *soon*.
sqng, m., n., *song, poem*.
sqngcręft, m., *art of song and poetry*.
sorg (sorh), f., *sorrow*.
sōđ, *true*.
sōđ, n., *truth*; **tō sōđe**, *for a truth, truly, verily*.
sōđ-fęest, *truthful, just*.
sōđlice, *truly*.
spęd, f., *possessions, success, riches* [speed].
spędig, *rich, prosperous*.
spell, n., *story, tale*.
spęow, see **spōwan**.
spere, n., *spear*.
spor, n., *track, footprint*.
spōwan (§ 117), *succeed* (impersonal with dat.).
spręc, f., *speech, language*.
sprecan (§ 115), *speak*.
spyrian (spyrigean) (§ 130), *follow* (intrans.) [**spor**].
stęf, *staff, rod*; pl. = *literature, learning*.
stęlhręn, m., *decoy-reindeer*.
stęlwierđe, *serviceable* (see p. 56, Note 2).
stęr, n., *story, narrative* [Lat. *historia*].
stęđ, n., *shore*.

stān, m., *stone, rock*.
stān-boga, m., *stone-arch* [stone-bow].
standan, see **stōndan**.
stānhlið (-hleōð), n., *stone-cliff*.
stapol, m., *column* [staple].
starian (§ 125), *stare, gaze*.
stēde, m., *place*.
stelan (§ 114), *steal*.
stēnt, see **stōndan**.
stēorbord, n., *starboard, right side of a ship*.
steppan (§ 116), *step, advance*; pret. indic. 3d sing., **stōp**.
stilnes, f., *stillness, quiet*.
stōndan (§ 116), *stand*.
stōp, see **steppan**.
storm, m., *storm*.
stōw, f., *place* [stow, and in names of places].
strang, see **strōng**.
strēngest, see **strōng**.
strōng (§ 96, (2)), *strong*.
styccemælum, *here and there*.
sum (§ 91, Note 2), *some, certain, a certain one*; **hē syxa sum** 104, 25 = *he with five others*.
sumera, see **sumor**.
sumor, m., *summer*; dat. sing. = **sumera**.
sumorlida, m., *summer-army*.
sundor, *apart*.
sunne, f., *sun*.
sunu, m., *son*.
sūð, *south, southwards*.
sūðan (§ 93, (5)), *from the south*; **be sūðan**, *south of* (§ 94, (4)).
sūðeweard, *southward*.
sūðryhte, *southward*.
swā (**swæ**), *so, as, how, as if*;
swā swā, *just as, as far as*;

swā . . . swā, *the . . . the, as . . . as*; **swā hwæt swā**, *whatsoever* (§ 77, Note).
swæs, *beloved, own*.
swæð, n., *track, footprint* [swath].
swaðul, m. ? n. ?, *smoke*.
swealh, see **swelgan**.
swefan (§ 115), *sleep, sleep the sleep of death*.
swefn, n., *sleep, dream*.
swēg, m., *sound, noise*.
swegle, *bright, clear*.
swēlan, *burn* [sweal].
swelgan (§ 110), *swallow*; pret. indic. 3d sing., **swealh**; subj., **swulge**.
swellan (§ 110), *swell*.
Swēoland, n., *Sweden*.
Swēom, m., dat. pl., *the Swedes*.
sweotol, *clear*.
sweotole, *clearly*.
swērian (§ 116), *swear*.
swēte, *sweet*.
swētnes (-nis), f., *sweetness*.
swift (**swyft**), *swift*.
swilc (**swylc**) (§ 77), *such*.
swilce, *in such manner, as, likewise*; *as if, as though* (with subj.).
swimman (§ 110), *swim*.
swīn (**swȳn**), n., *swine, hog*.
swīnsung, f., *melody, harmony*.
swiðe (**swȳðe**), *very, exceedingly, greatly*.
swiðost, *chiefly, almost*.
swōr, see **swērian**.
swulge, see **swelgan**.
swuster (§ 68, (2)), f., *sister*.
swylce (**swelce**), see **swilce**.
swyft, see **swift**.
swȳn, see **swīn**.

swyðe, see **swiðe**.

swyð-ferhð, *strong-souled*.

syf, see **self**.

syll, f., *sill, floor*.

syllan, see **sellan**.

symbol, n., *feast, banquet*.

symle, *always*.

synd, see **bēon**.

syn-dolh, n., *ceaseless wound, incurable wound*.

syndriglice, *specially*.

synn, f., *sin*.

syn-scaða, m., *ceaseless scather, perpetual foe*.

syn-snæd, f., *huge bit* [ceaseless bit].

syððan, see **siððan**.

syx, see **siox**.

syxtig, see **siextig**.

T.

tācen, n., *sign, token*; dat. sing., **tācne** (§ 33, Note).

tæcan (§ 128), *teach*.

tam, *tame*.

tela, *properly, well* [til].

teġlan (§ 128), *count, deem* [tell]; pret. 3d sing., **tealde**.

Teġmes, f., *the Thames*.

tēon, *arrange, create*; pret. sing., **tēode**.

Terfinna, m., gen. pl., *the Terfins*.

tēð, see **tōð**.

tīd, f., *tide, time, hour*.

tīen (tȳn), *ten*.

tīl(l), *good*.

tīma, m., *time*.

tintreglic, *full of torment*.

tō (§ 94, (1)), *to, for, according to, as*; **tō hrōfe** 114, 2 = *for (as) a roof* [cf. Biblical *to wife*, modern *to boot*].

tō, adv., *too*.

tōbrecan (p. 81, Note 2), *break to pieces, knock about*.

tōdælan (§ 126), *divide*.

tōemnes (tō emnes) (§ 94, (4)), *along, alongside*.

tōforan (§ 94, (1)), *before*.

tōgeðeodan (§ 126), *join*.

tōhopa, m., *hope*.

tōlicgan (§ 115, Note 2), *separate, lie between*; 3d sing. indic. = **tōlið**.

tōlið, see **tōlicgan**.

tolūcan (109, Note 1), *destroy* [the prefix **tō** reverses the meaning of **lūcan**, *to lock*].

torn, m., *anger, insult*.

tōð (§ 68, (1)), m., *tooth*.

tōweard (§ 94, (1)), *toward*.

tōweard, adj., *approaching, future*.

trēow, f., *pledge, troth*.

trēownes, f., *trust*.

Trūsō, *Drausen* (a city on the Drausensea).

tūn, m., *town, village*.

tunge, f., *tongue*.

tūngerēfa, m., *bailiff* [town-reeve; so sheriff = shire-reeve].

tungol, n., *star*.

twā, see **twēgen**.

twēgen, (§ 89), *two, twain*.

twēntig, *twenty*.

tȳn, see **tīen**.

Ð.

ðā, *then, when*; **ðā . . . ðā**, *when . . . then*; **ðā ðā**, *then when = when*.

ðā, see **sē**.

ðær, *there, where*; **ðær ðær**, *there where = where*; **ðær . . .**

- swā** 142, 4 = *wheresoever*; 145, 6 = *if so be that*.
ðæs, *afterwards, therefore, thus, because*; see **sē**.
ðæt (**ðætte** = **ðæt ðe**), *that, so that*.
ðafian (§ 130), *consent to*.
ðanc, see **ðqnc**.
ðancian (**ðqncian**) (§ 130), *thank*.
ðanon, see **ðqnan**.
ðās, see **ðēs**.
ðē, see **sē** (instr. sing.) and **ðū**.
ðe (§ 75), *who, whom, which, that*.
ðeah, *though, although*; **ðeah ðe**, *though, although*.
ðearf, see **ðurfan**.
ðearf, f., *need, benefit*.
ðēaw, m., *habit, custom*.
ðegn (**ðegen**), m., *servant,thane, warrior*.
ðenc(e)an (§ 128), *think, intend*.
ðening(-ung), f., *service*; the pl. may mean *book of service* (117, 17).
ðēod, f., *people, nation*.
ðēoden, m., *prince, lord*; gen. sing., **ðēodnes**.
ðēon (**ðywan**) (§ 126), *oppress* [**ðēow**].
ðēow, m., *servant*.
ðēowa, m., *servant*.
ðēowotdōm (**ðīowot-**), m., *service*.
ðēs (§ 73), *this*.
ðider, *thither*.
ðiderweard, *thitherward*.
ðīn (§ 76), *thine*.
ðing, n., *thing*; **ænige ðinga**, see 140, 15, Note.
ðingan (§ 127), *arrange, appoint*.
ðis, see **ðēs**.
ðissum, see **ðēs**.
ðōhte, **ðōhton**, see **ðencean**.
ðolian (§ 130), *endure* [*thole*].
ðqnan, *thence*.
ðqnc, m., *thanks*.
ðone, see **sē**.
ðonne, *than, then, when*; **ðonne . . . ðonne**, *when . . . then*.
ðrāg, f., *time*.
ðrēa-nȳd, f., *compulsion, oppression, misery* [*throe-need*].
ðrēora, see **ðrie**.
ðridda, *third*.
ðrie (**ðry**) (§ 89), *three*.
ðrim, see **ðrie**.
ðrist-hȳdig, *bold-minded*.
ðritig, *thirty*.
ðrōwung, f., *suffering*.
ðry, see **ðrie**.
ðrym(m), m., *renown, glory, strength*.
ðryð, f., *power, multitude* (pl. used in sense of sing.); **asca ðryðe** 152, 23 = *the might of spears*.
ðryð-ærn, n., *mighty house, noble hall*.
ðryð-word, n., *mighty word, excellent discourse*.
ðū (§ 72), *thou*.
ðūhte, see **ðyncan**.
ðurfan (§ 136), *need*; pres. indie. 3d sing., **ðearf**; pret. 3d sing., **ðorfte**; **for-ðām mē witan ne ðearf Waldend fira mor-ðor-bealo māga** 145, 17 = *therefore the Ruler of men need not charge me with the murder of kinsmen*.
ðurh (§ 94, (2)), *through*.
ðus, *thus*.
ðūsend, *thousand*.

ðȳ, see *sē*.

ðyder, see *ðider*.

ðyncan (§ 128), *seem, appear* (impersonal); *mē ðyncð, me-thinks, it seems to me*; *him ðūhte, it seemed to him*.

U.

ūhta, m., *dawn*; gen. pl., *ūhtna*.

unbeboht, *unsold* [*bebycgan = to sell*].

uncūð, *unknown, uncertain* [*uncouth*].

under, *under* (with dat. and acc.).

understōndan (§ 116), *understand*.

underðēodan (-dīedan) (§ 126), *subject to*; past part. *underðēoded = subjected to, obedient to* (with dat.).

unforbærned, *unburned*.

unfrið, m., *hostility*.

ungefōge, *excessively*.

ungemete, *immeasurably, very*.

ungesewenlic, *invisible* [past part. of *sēon + lic*].

unlyfigend, *dead, dead man* [*unliving*].

unlytel, *no little, great*.

unriht, n., *wrong*; on *unriht, see on*.

unrihtwīsnes, f., *unrighteousness*.

unspēdig, *poor*.

unwearnum, *unawares*.

ūp (ūpp), *up*.

ūpāstignes, f., *ascension* [*stīgan*].

ūp-lang, *upright*.

ūre (§ 76), *our*.

usses = gen. sing. neut. of *ūs*, *see ic*.

ūt, *out, outside*.

ūtan, *from without, outside*.

ūtanbordes, *abroad*.

ūtgong, m., *exodus*.

uton, *let us* (with infin.) [literally *let us go* with infin. of purpose (see 137, 19-20, Note); *uton = wuton*, corrupted form of 1st pl. subj. of *wītan, to go*].

ūt-weard, *outward bound, moving outwards*.

W.

wāc, *weak, insignificant*.

wacian (§ 130), *watch, be on guard*; imperative sing., *waca*.

wadan (§ 116), *go, tread* [*wade*].

wæg, m., *wave*.

Wægmundigas, m., *Wægmundings* (family to which *Beowulf* and *Wiglaf* belonged).

wæl, n., *slaughter, the slain*.

wæl-blēat, *deadly* [*slaughter-pitiful*].

wælgīfre, *greedy for slaughter*.

wæl-ræs, m., *mortal combat* [*slaughter-race*].

wæl-rēow, *fierce in strife*.

wælsliht (-sleht), m., *slaughter*.

wælstōw, f., *battle-field* [*slaughter-place*]; *wælstōwe gewald, possession of the battle-field*.

wæpen, n., *weapon*.

wære, see *bēon*.

wæs, see *bēon*.

wæter, n., *water*.

waldend, see *wealdend*.

wan (wōn), *wan, dark*.

wanhȳdig, *heedless, rash*.

wānigean (wānian) (§ 130), *bewail, lament* (trans.) [*whine*].

- warian** (§ 130), *attend, accompany*.
- wāt**, see **witan**.
- waðum**, m., *wave*; gen. pl., **waðema**.
- weal**(1), m., *wall, rampart*.
- wealdend** (§ 68, (3)), *wielder, ruler, lord*.
- wealh**, m., *foreigner, Welshman*.
- wealhstōd**, m., *interpreter, translator*.
- weallan** (§ 117), *well up, boil, be agitated*; pret. 3d. sing. indic., **wēoll**.
- wealsteal**(1), m., *wall-place, foundation*.
- weard**, m., *ward, keeper*.
- wearð**, see **weorðan**.
- weaxan** (§ 117), *wax, grow*.
- weg**, m., *way*; **hys weg**, see § 93, (3); **on weg**, see **on**.
- wel**(1), *well, readily*.
- wela**, m., *weal, prosperity, riches*.
- welm**, see **wylm**.
- wēnan** (§ 126), *ween, think, expect*.
- wēndan** (§ 127), *change, translate* [**wend**, **windan**].
- wēnian** (§ 130), *entertain*; **wēnian mid wynnum** 149, 20 = *entertain joyfully*; **wēnede tō wiste** 149, 27 = *feasted* (trans.).
- Weonodland** (**Weonoðland**), n., *Wendland*.
- weorc**, n., *work, deed*.
- weorold** (**weoruld**), see **woruld**.
- weorpan** (§ 110), *throw*.
- weorðan** (§ 110), *be, become*.
- wer**, m., *man* [**werwulf**].
- wērig**, *weary, dejected*.
- werod**, n., *army, band*.
- wesan**, see **bēon**.
- Wesseaxe**, m. pl., *West Saxons*; gen. pl. = **Wesseaxna**.
- west**, *west, westward*.
- westanwind**, m., *west wind*.
- wēste**, *waste*.
- wēsten**, n., *waste, desert*.
- Westsæ**, f., *West Sea* (west of Norway).
- Westseaxe**, m. pl., *West Saxons, Wessex*.
- wīc**, n., *dwelling* [bailiwick].
- wīcian** (§ 130), *dwelt, lodge, sojourn* [**wīc**].
- wīdre**, adv., *farther, more widely* (comparative of **wīde**).
- wīdsæ**, f., *open sea*.
- wielm** (**welm**), m., *welling, surging flood* [**weallan**].
- wīf**, n., *wife, woman*.
- wīg**, m., n., *war, battle*.
- wiga**, m., *warrior*.
- wild**, *wild*.
- wildor**, n., *wild beast, reindeer*; dat. pl. = **wildrum** (§ 33, Note).
- willa**, m., *will, pleasure*; gen. pl., **wilna** (138, 16).
- willan** (§ 134; § 137, Note 3), *will, intend, desire*.
- wilnung**, f., *wish, desire*; **for ðære wilnunga** 119, 4 = *purposefully*.
- Wiltūn**, m., *Wilton* (in Wiltshire).
- wīn**, n., *wine*.
- wīn-ærn**, n., *wine-hall*.
- Wīnburne**, f., *Wimborne* (in Dorsetshire).
- wind**, m., *wind*.
- wine**, m., *friend*.
- Winedas**, m. pl., *the Wends, the Wend country*.
- wine-dryhten**, m., *friendly lord*.
- winelēas**, *friendless*.

winemæg, m., *friendly kinsman*.
wingearð, m., *vineyard*.

winnan (§ 110), *strive, fight*
 [win].

winsæl, n., *wine-hall*.

wīn-sele, m., *wine-hall*.

winter, m., *winter*; dat. sing. =
wintra.

wintercearig, *winter-sad, winter-*
worn.

wīs, *wise*.

wīsdōm, m., *wisdom*.

wīse, *wisely*.

wīse, f., *manner, matter, affair*
 [in this wise].

wīs-fæst, *wise* [wise-fast; cf.
 shame-faced = shamefast].

wīs-hycgende, *wise-thinking*.

Wīse, f., *the Vistula*.

Wīsemūða, m., *the mouth of the*
Vistula.

wisse, see **witan**.

wist, f., *food, feast*.

wita, m., *wise man, councillor*.

witan (§ 136), *know, show,*
experience.

wītan (§ 102), *reproach, blame*
 (with acc. of thing, dat. of per-
 son).

wīte, n., *punishment*.

Witland, n., *Witland* (in Prussia).

wið (94, (3)), *against, toward,*
with; **wið ēastan and wið ūpp**
on emnlange ðæm bȳnum
lande, *toward the east, and up-*
wards along the cultivated land; **wið**
earm gesæt 139, 11 = *sup-*
ported himself on his arm; **ge-**
nered wið niðe (dat.) 143, 11
 = *had preserved it from (against)*
violence.

wiðerwinna, m., *adversary*.

wiðfōn (§ 118), *grapple with*
 (with dat.).

wiðhabban (§ 133), *withstand,*
resist (with dat.).

wiðstōndan (§ 116), *withstand,*
resist (with dat.).

wlōnc, *proud*.

wōd, see **wadan**.

wolcen, n., *cloud* [welkin]; dat.
 pl., **wolcnum**.

wolde, see **willan**.

wōma, m., *noise, alarm, terror*.

wōn, see **wan**.

wōp, n., *weeping*.

word, n., *word*.

wōrian (§ 130), *totter, crumble*.

worn, m., *large number, multi-*
tude.

woruld, f., *world*; **tō worulde**
būtan æghwilcum ende 102,
 18 = *world without end*.

woruldcund, *worldly, secular*.

woruldhād, m., *secular life*
 [world-hood].

woruldrīce, n., *world-kingdom,*
world.

worulddīng, n., *worldly affair*.

wræclāst, m., *track or path of*
an exile.

wrāð, *wroth, angry*; *foe, enemy*.

writan (§ 102), *write*.

wucu, f., *week*.

wudu, m., *wood, forest*.

wuldor, n., *glory*.

Wuldorfæder (§ 68, (2)), m.,
Father of glory; gen. sing.,
Wuldorfæder.

Wuldur-cyning, m., *King of*
glory.

wulf, m., *wolf*.

wund, f., *wound*.

wund, *wounded*.

wunden, *twisted, woven, convolute* (past part. of **windan**).

wundor, n., *wonder, marvel*.

wundrian (§ 130), *wonder at* (with gen.).

wurdon, see **weorðan**.

wurðan, see **weorðan**.

wylf, f., *she wolf*.

wyllað, see **willan**.

wyn-lēas, *joyless*.

wynn, f., *joy, delight*.

wynsum, *winsome, delightful*.

wyrc(e)an (§ 128), *work, make, compose*.

wyrd, f., *weird, fate, destiny*.

wyrhta, m., *worker, creator* [-wright].

wyrm, m., *worm, dragon, serpent*.

wyrmlica, m., *serpentine ornamentation*.

wyrð (**weorð**), *worthy*; see 114, 7-9, Note.

Y.

ylca, see **ilca**.

yldan (§ 127), *delay, postpone* [eald].

yldu, f., *age* [eld].

ymbe (**ymb**) (§ 94, (2)), *about, around, concerning* [unwhile];
ðæs ymb iii niht 99, 2 = *about three nights afterwards*.

ymb-ēode, see **ymb-gān**.

ymbe-sittend, *one who sits* (dwells) *round about another, neighbor*.

ymb-gān (§ 134), *go about, go around, circle* (with acc.).

yrf-weard, m., *heir*.

yrnan, see **iernan**.

yrre, *ireful, angry*.

yteren, *of an otter* [otor].

ȳðan (§ 126), *lay waste* (as by a deluge) [ȳð = wave].

II. GLOSSARY.

MODERN ENGLISH—OLD ENGLISH.

A.

a, *ān* (§ 77).
abide, *bīdan* (§ 102), *ābidan*.
about, *be* (§ 94, (1)), *ymbe* (§ 94, (2)); **to write about**, *writan be*; **to speak about** (= of), *sprecan ymbe*; **about two days afterwards**, *ðæs ymbe twēgen dagas*.
adder, *nædre* (§ 64).
afterwards, *ðæs* (§ 93, (3)).
against, *wið* (§ 94, (3)), *on* (§ 94, (3)).
Alfred, *Ælfred* (§ 26).
all, *eall* (§ 80).
also, *ēac*.
although, *ðēah* (§ 105, 2).
always, *ā*; *ealne weg* (§ 98, (1)).
am, *eom* (§ 40).
an, see **a**.
and, *and* (*and*).
angel, *engel* (§ 26).
animal, *dēor* (§ 32).
are, *sind*, *sint*, *sindon* (§ 40).
army, *werod* (§ 32); **Danish army**, *here* (§ 26); **English army**, *fierd* (§ 38).
art, *eart* (§ 40).
Ashdown, *Æscesdūn* (§ 38).

ask, *biddan* (§ 65, Note 3; § 115, Note 2).
away, *aweg*.

B.

battle-field, *wælstōw* (§ 38).
be, *bēon* (§ 40); **not to be**, see § 40, Note 2.
bear, *beran* (§ 114).
because, *for ðæm* (*ðe*), *for ðon* (*ðe*).
become, *weorðan* (§ 110).
before (temporal conjunction), *ær*, *ær ðæm ðe* (§ 105, 2).
begin, *onginnan* (§ 107, (1); § 110).
belong to, *belimpan tō* + dative (§ 110).
best, see **good**.
better, see **good**.
bind, *bindan* (§ 110).
bird, *fugol* (§ 26).
bite, *bītan* (§ 102).
body, *lic* (§ 32).
bone, *bān* (§ 32).
book, *bōc* (§ 68).
both . . . and, *ægðer ge . . . ge*.
boundary, *mearc* (§ 38).
boy, *cnapa* (§ 64).

break, *brēotan* (§ 109), *brecan*,
ābrecan (§ 114).
brother, *brōðor* (§ 68, (2)).
but, *ac*.
by, *frēm* (*fram*) (§ 94, (1));
 § 141, Note 1).

C.

Cædmon, *Cædmōn* (§ 68, (1)).
call, *hātan* (§ 117, (1)).
cease, **cease from**, *geswīcan*
 (§ 102).
child, *bearn* (§ 32).
choose, *cēosan* (§ 109).
Christ, *Crīst* (§ 26).
church, *cirice* (§ 64).
come, *cuman* (§ 114).
comfort, *frōfor* (§ 38).
companion, *gefēra* (§ 64).
consolation, *frōfor* (§ 38).
create, *gescieppan* (§ 116).

D.

Danes, *Dene* (§ 47).
day, *dæg* (§ 26).
dead, *dēad* (§ 80).
dear (= beloved), *lēof* (§ 80).
deed, *dēd* (§ 38).
die, *cwelan* (§ 114).
division (of troops), *gefylce*
 (§ 32), *getruma* (§ 64).
do, *dōn* (§ 134).
door, *dor* (§ 32), *duru* (§ 52).
drink, *drīncan* (§ 110).
during, *on* (§ 94, (3)). See also
 § 98.
 dwell in, *būan on* (§ 126, Note
 2).

E.

earl, *eorl* (§ 26).
endure, *drēogan* (§ 109).
England, *Englaland* (§ 32).
enjoy, *brūcan* (§ 62, Note 1;
 § 109, Note 1).
every, *ælc* (§ 77).
eye, *ēage* (§ 64).

F.

father, *fæder* (§ 68, (2)).
field, *fēld* (§ 51).
fight, *feohtan*, *gefeohtan* (§ 110).
find, *findan* (§ 110).
finger, *fīnger* (§ 26).
fire, *fȳr* (§ 32).
fisherman, *fiscere* (§ 26).
foreigner, *wealh* (§ 26).
freedom, *frēodōm* (§ 26).
friend, *wīne* (§ 45), *frēond* (§ 68,
 (3)).
friendship, *frēondscipe* (§ 45).
full, *full* (with genitive) (§ 80).

G.

gain the victory, *sige habban*,
sige niman.
gift, *giefu* (§ 38).
give, *giefan* (with dative of in-
 direct object) (§ 115).
glad, *glæd* (§ 81).
glove, *glōf* (§ 38).
go, *gān* (§ 134), *faran* (§ 116).
God, *God* (§ 26).
good, *gōd* (§ 80).

H.

Halgoland, *Hālgoland* (§ 32).
hall, *heall* (§ 38).

hand, *hond* (§ 52).
hard, *heard* (§ 80).
have, *habban* (§ 34); **not to have**, *nabban* (p. 32, Note).
he, *hē* (§ 53).
head, *hēafod* (§ 32).
hear, *hīeran* (§ 126).
heaven, *heofon* (§ 26).
help, *helpan* (with dative) (§ 110).
herdsman, *hierde* (§ 26).
here, *hēr*.
hither, *hider*.
hold, *healdan* (§ 117, (2)).
holy, *hālig* (§ 82).
horse, *nearh* (§ 26), *hors* (§ 32).
house, *hūs* (§ 32).

I.

I, *ic* (§ 72).
in, *on* (§ 94, (3)).
indeed, *sōðlice*.
injure, *scēððan* (with dative) (§ 116).
it, *hit* (§ 53).

K.

king, *cyning* (§ 26).
kingdom, *rīce* (§ 32), *cynerīce* (§ 32).

L.

land, *lond* (§ 32).
language, *spræc* (§ 38), *geðēode* (§ 32).
large, *micel* (§ 82).
leisure, *āmetta* (§ 64).
let us, *uton* (with infinitive).
limb, *lim* (§ 32).
little, *lytel* (§ 82).
live in, *būan on* (§ 126, Note 2).
lord, *hlāford* (§ 26).

love, *lufian* (§ 131).
love (noun), *lufu* (§ 38).

M.

make, *wyrcan* (§ 128).
man, *secg* (§ 26), *mæn* (§ 68, (1)).
many, *męnig* (§ 82).
mare, *mýre* (§ 64).
mead, *medu* (§ 51).
Mercians, *Mierce* (§ 47).
milk, *meolc* (§ 38).
month, *mōnað* (§ 68, (1), Note 1).
mouth, *mūð* (§ 26).
much, *micel* (§ 96, (3)), *micle* (§ 97, (2)).
murderer, *bęna* (§ 64).
my, *mīn* (§ 76).

N.

natives, *londlēode* (§ 47).
nephew, *nefa* (§ 64).
new, *nīwe* (§ 82).
Northumbrians, *Norðymbre* (§ 47).
not, *ne*.

O.

of, see **about**.
on, *on* (§ 94, (3)), *ofer* (§ 94, (2)).
one, *ān* (§ 89); **the one** . . .
the other, *ōðer* . . . *ōðer*.
other, *ōðer* (§ 77).
our, *ūre* (§ 76).
ox, *oxa* (§ 64).

P.

place, *stōw* (§ 38).
plundering, *hęrgung* (§ 38).

poor, *earn* (§ 80), *unspēdig* (§ 82).
prosperous, *spēdig* (§ 82).

Q.

queen, *cwēn* (§ 49).

R.

reindeer, *hrān* (§ 26).
remain, *bīdan* (§ 102), *ābīdan*.
retain possession of the battle-
field, *āgan wælstōwe gewald*.
rich, *rīce* (§ 82), *spēdig* (§ 82).
ride, *rīdan* (§ 102).

S.

say, *cweðan* (§ 115), *sęcgan*
(§ 133).
scribe, *bōcere* (§ 26).
seal, *seolh* (§ 26).
see, *sēon* (§ 118), *gesēon*.
serpent, *nēdre* (§ 64).
servant, *ðēowa* (§ 64), *ðegn* (§ 26).
shall, *sculan* (§ 136; § 137,
Note 2).
she, *hēo* (§ 53).
shepherd, *hierde* (§ 26).
ship, *scīp* (§ 32).
shire, *scīr* (§ 38).
shoemaker, *scēowyrhta* (§ 64).
side, on both sides, *on gehwǣdre*
hond.
six, *sīex* (§ 90).
slaughter, *wæl* (§ 32), *wælsliht*
(§ 45).
small, *lȳtel* (§ 82).
son, *sunu* (§ 51).
soul, *sāwol* (§ 38).
speak, *sprecan* (§ 115).
spear, *gār* (§ 26), *spere* (§ 32).

stand, *stȳndan* (§ 116).
stone, *stān* (§ 26).
stranger, *wealh* (§ 26), *cuma*
(§ 64).
suffer, *drēogan* (§ 109).
sun, *sunne* (§ 64).
swift, *swīft* (§ 80).

T.

take, *nīman* (§ 110).
than, *ðonne* (§ 96, (6)).
thane, *ðegn* (§ 26).
that (conjunction), *ðæt*.
that (demonstrative), *sē, sēo, ðæt*
(§ 28).
that (relative), *ðe* (§ 75).
the, *sē, sēo, ðæt* (§ 28).
then, *ðā, ðonne*.
these, see *this*.
they, *hīe* (§ 53).
thing, *ðing* (§ 32).
thirty, *ðrītīg*.
this, *ðēs, ðeos, ðis* (§ 73).
those, see *that* (demonstrative).
thou, *ðu* (§ 72).
though, *ðeah* (§ 105, 2).
three, *ðrie* (§ 89).
throne, ascend the throne, *tō*
rīce fōn.
throw, *weorpan* (§ 110).
to, *tō* (§ 94, (1)).
tongue, *tunge* (§ 64).
track, *spor* (§ 32).
true, *sōð* (§ 80).
truly, *sōðlice*.
two, *twēgen* (§ 89).

V.

very, *swīðe*.
vessel, *fæt* (§ 32).
victory, *sige* (§ 45).

W.

wall, *weall* (§ 26).
warrior, *secg* (§ 26), *eorl* (§ 26).
way, *weg* (§ 26).
weapon, *wæpen* (§ 32).
well, *wel* (§ 97, (2)).
Welshman, *Wealh* (§ 26).
went, see *go*.
westward, *west*, *westrihte*.
whale, *hwæl* (§ 26).
what? *hwæt* (§ 74).
when, *ðā*, *ðonne*.
where? *hwær*.
which, *ðe* (§ 75).
who? *hwā* (§ 74).
who (relative), *ðe* (§ 75).
whosoever, *swā hwā swā* (§ 77, Note).
will, *willan* (§ 134 ; § 137, Note 3).
Wilton, *Wiltūn* (§ 26).
win, see *gain*.

wine, *wīn* (§ 32).
wisdom, *wīsdōm* (§ 26).
wise, *wīs* (§ 80).
with, *mid* (§ 94, (1)); **to fight with** (= against), *gefeohtan wið* (§ 94, (3)).
withstand, *wiðstondan* (with dative) (§ 116).
wolf, *wulf* (§ 26), *wylf* (§ 38).
woman, *wīf* (§ 32).
word, *word* (§ 32).
worm, *wyrm* (§ 45).

Y.

ye, *gē* (§ 72).
year, *gēar* (§ 32).
yoke, *geoc* (§ 32).
you, *ðū* (singular), *gē* (plural) (§ 72).
your, *ðīn* (singular), *ēower* (plural) (§ 76).

Orations and Arguments.

Edited by Professor C. B. BRADLEY, University of California. 12mo, cloth, 385 pages. Price, \$1.00.

The following speeches are contained in the book:—

BURKE:

On Conciliation with the Colonies, and Speech before the Electors at Bristol.

CHATHAM:

On American Affairs.

ERSKINE:

In the Stockdale Case.

LINCOLN:

The Gettysburg Address.

WEBSTER:

The Reply to Hayne.

MACAULAY:

On the Reform Bill of 1832.

CALHOUN:

On the Slavery Question.

SEWARD:

On the Irrepressible Conflict.

IN making this selection, the test applied to each speech was that it should be in itself memorable, attaining its distinction through the essential qualities of nobility and force of ideas, and that it should be, in topic, so related to the great thoughts, memories, or problems of our own time as to have for us still an inherent and vital interest.

The speeches thus chosen have been printed from the best available texts, without change, save that the spelling has been made uniform throughout, and that three of the speeches—those of Webster, Calhoun, and Seward—have been shortened somewhat by the omission of matters of merely temporal or local interest. The omitted portions have been summarized for the reader, whenever they bear upon the main argument.

The Notes aim to furnish the reader with whatever help is necessary to the proper appreciation of the speeches; to avoid bewildering him with mere subtleties and display of erudition; and to encourage in him habits of self-help and familiarity with sources of information.

A special feature of this part of the work is a sketch of the English Constitution and Government, intended as a general introduction to the English speeches.

The collection includes material enough to permit of a varied selection for the use of successive classes in the schools.

Studies in English Composition.

By HARRIET C. KEELER, High School, Cleveland, Ohio, and EMMA C. DAVIS, Cleveland, Ohio. 12mo, cloth, 210 pages. Price, 80 cents.

THIS book is the outgrowth of experience in teaching composition, and the lessons which it contains have all borne the actual test of the class-room. Intended to meet the wants of those schools which have composition as a weekly exercise in their course of study, it contains an orderly succession of topics adapted to the age and development of high school pupils, together with such lessons in language and rhetoric as are of constant application in class exercises.

The authors believe that too much attention cannot be given to supplying young writers with good models, which not only indicate what is expected, and serve as an ideal toward which to work, but stimulate and encourage the learner in his first efforts. For this reason numerous examples of good writing have been given, and many more have been suggested.

The primal idea of the book is that the pupil learns to write by writing; and therefore that it is of more importance to get him to write than to prevent his making mistakes in writing. Consequently, the pupil is set to writing at the very outset; the idea of producing something is kept constantly uppermost, and the function of criticism is reserved until after something has been done which may be criticised.

J. W. Stearns, *Professor of Pedagogy, University of Wisconsin*: It strikes me that the author of your "Studies in English Composition" touches the gravest defect in school composition work when she writes in her preface: "One may as well expect a sea-anemone to show its beauty when grasped in the hand, as look for originality in a child, hampered by the conviction that every sentence he writes will be dislocated in order to be improved." In order to improve the beauty of the body we drive out the soul in our extreme formal criticisms of school compositions. She has made a book which teaches children to write by getting them to write often and freely; and if used with the spirit which has presided over the making of it, it will prove a most effective instrument for the reform of school composition work.

Albert G. Owen, *Superintendent, Afton, Iowa*: It is an excellent text. I am highly pleased with it. The best of the kind I have yet seen.

Introduction to Theme-Writing.

By J. B. FLETCHER, Harvard University, and Professor G. R. CARPENTER, Columbia College. 16mo, cloth, 136 pages. Price, 60 cents.

THE lectures that form the basis of this book were delivered by Mr. Fletcher before the Freshman class at Harvard College in the spring of 1893. These have been rearranged, with additional matter by Professor Carpenter. The result is a text-book for students who have completed the introductory course in rhetoric usually prescribed at the beginning of the Freshman year.

The fundamental idea of the book is that in practising any of the various kinds of composition the student must decide:—

1. Just what treatment will be most appropriate to the subject-matter in general.

2. What treatment will most clearly bring out his own individual ideas or impressions of this matter.

3. What treatment will make this subject most clear to the particular class of readers or hearers which he has in mind.

Letter-writing, Translation, Description, Criticism, Exposition, and Argument are each treated in a clear and concise manner, and exercises on each subject are freely introduced.

Selections from Carlyle.

Edited by HENRY W. BOYNTON, Instructor in English in Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass. 12mo, cloth, 283 pages. Price, 75 cents.

THIS volume includes material adequate for the elementary study of Carlyle in his earliest and most fruitful period. It contains the Essays on Burns, on History, on Boswell's Life of Johnson, and selections from Heroes and Hero-Worship.

The Notes are planned in the main to give aid rather than information or opinion, and by frequent quotation of illustrative passages, to make the author his own interpreter.

The Essays on Burns and on Johnson, with their respective Notes, are reprinted to form volumes of the Academy Series of English Classics, advertised on page 1 of this catalogue.

De Quincey's Essays on Style, Rhetoric, and Language.

Edited by Professor FRED N. SCOTT, University of Michigan. 12mo, 276 pages. Price, 60 cents.

THE essays selected are those which deal directly with the theory of literature. The appendix contains such passages from De Quincey's other writings as will be of most assistance to the student. The introduction and notes are intended to reinforce, not to forestall, research.

Principles of Success in Literature.

By GEORGE HENRY LEWES. Edited with Introduction and Notes by Professor FRED N. SCOTT. 12mo, 159 pages. Price 50 cents.

THE object of reprinting this admirable little treatise on literature is to make it available for classes in rhetoric and literary criticism. Scarcely any other work will be found so thoroughly sound in principles, and so suggestive and inspiring.

The value of the present edition is greatly increased by the excellent introduction by Professor Scott, and by a full index, which adds much to its convenience.

Professor O. B. Clarke, Ripon College, Ripon, Wisconsin: Your reprint of Lewes's articles on "The Principles of Success in Literature" puts another sharp and serviceable tool into the hands of the teacher and student of the art of composition. Professor Scott, as well as yourselves, deserves the thanks of all who care for truth and force in working.

Spencer's Philosophy of Style and Wright's Essay on Style.

Edited by Professor FRED N. SCOTT. 12mo, 92 pages. Price, 45 cents.

THE plan has been followed of providing a biographical and critical introduction, an index, and a few notes,—the latter designed to provoke discussion or to furnish clues for further investigation.

Composition-Rhetoric for Use in Secondary Schools.

By Professors F. N. SCOTT, of the University of Michigan, and J. V. DENNEY, of Ohio State University. 12mo, cloth, 370 pages. Price, \$1.00.

IN the preparation of this work the authors have been guided by three considerations.

First, it is desirable that a closer union than has hitherto prevailed be brought about between secondary composition and secondary rhetoric. The rhetoric which is found in this book is meant to be the theory of the pupil's practice.

Second, it is desirable in secondary composition that greater use be made of the paragraph than has hitherto been done. In this book the paragraph is made the basis of a systematic method of instruction.

A third idea which underlies the work is the idea of growth. A composition is regarded not as a dead form, to be analyzed into its component parts, but as a living product of an active, creative mind.

In working out these ideas, care has been taken to provide illustrative material of a kind that should be thought-provoking, interesting, and valuable in itself, but not too far above the standard of literary practice.

Professor Sophie C. Hart, Wellesley College, Wellesley, Mass. : As a whole I consider it the best book on English Composition for the preparatory school, and shall recommend it to all teachers who send students to Wellesley.

Superintendent Mark S. W. Jefferson, Lexington, Mass. : The only rational book on the subject that I know. Apart from the practical manner of approaching the subject, I am delighted with the material chosen for the illustration of principles; pupils will find enjoyment in every paragraph.

Miss Harriet L. Mason, Drexel Institute, Philadelphia, Pa. : I find it all that I could wish. The book fills a unique place in English text-books, and is in the very van of the best teaching of composition. I shall use it during the coming year.

Professor Robert Herrick, University of Chicago, Chicago, Ill. : It is really a long stride in the right direction. It throws overboard much useless rubbish contained in the secondary school rhetoric, and teaches explicitly how to get material, how to arrange it, and how to present it.

Paragraph-Writing.

By Professor F. N. SCOTT, University of Michigan, and Professor J. V. DENNEY, Ohio State University. 12mo, 304 pages. Price, \$1.00.

THE principles embodied in this work were developed and put in practice by its authors at the University of Michigan several years ago. Its aim is to make the paragraph the basis of a method of composition, and to present all the important facts of rhetoric in their application to it.

In Part I. the nature and laws of the paragraph are presented; the structure and function of the isolated paragraph are discussed, and considerable space is devoted to related paragraphs; that is, those which are combined into essays.

Part II. is a chapter on the theory of the paragraph intended for teachers and advanced students.

Part III. contains copious material for class work, selected paragraphs, suggestions to teachers, lists of subjects for compositions (about two thousand), and helpful references of many kinds.

The Revised Edition contains a chapter on the Rhetoric of the Paragraph, in which will be found applications of the paragraph-idea to the sentence, and to the constituent parts of the sentence, so far as these demand especial notice. The new material thus provided supplies, in the form of principles and illustrations, as much additional theory as the student of Elementary Rhetoric needs to master and apply, in order to improve the details of his paragraphs in unity, clearness, and force.

Professor J. M. Hart, Cornell University: The style of the writers is admirable for clearness and correctness. . . . They have produced an uncommonly sensible text-book. . . . For college work it will be hard to beat. I know of no other book at all comparable to it for freshman drill.

Professor Charles Mills Gayley, University of California: Paragraph-Writing is the best thing of its kind, — the only systematic and exhaustive effort to present a cardinal feature of rhetorical training to the educational world.

The Dial, March, 1894: Paragraph-Writing is one of the really practical books on English composition. . . . A book that successfully illustrates the three articles of the rhetorician's creed, — theory, example, and practice.

From Milton to Tennyson.

Masterpieces of English Poetry. Edited by L. DU PONT SYLE, University of California. 12mo, cloth, 480 pages. Price, \$1.00.

IN this work the editor has endeavored to bring together within the compass of a moderate-sized volume as much narrative, descriptive, and lyric verse as a student may reasonably be required to read critically for entrance to college. From the nineteen poets represented, only such masterpieces have been selected as are within the range of the understanding and the sympathy of the high school student. Each masterpiece is given complete, except for pedagogical reasons in the cases of Thomson, Cowper, Byron, and Browning. Exigencies of space have compelled the editor reluctantly to omit Scott from this volume. The copyright laws, of course, exclude American poets from the scope of this work.

The following poets are represented : —

MILTON, by the	L'Allegro, Il Penseroso, Lycidas, and a Selection from the Sonnets.
DRYDEN . . .	Epistle to Congreve, Alexander's Feast, Character of a Good Parson.
POPE . . .	Epistles to Mr. Jervas, to Lord Burlington, and to Augustus.
THOMSON . .	Winter.
JOHNSON . .	Vanity of Human Wishes.
GRAY	Elegy Written in a Country Churchyard, and The Bard.
GOLDSMITH .	Deserted Village.
COWPER . . .	Winter Morning's Walk.
BURNS . . .	Cotter's Saturday Night, Tam O'Shanter, and a Selection from the Songs.
COLERIDGE .	Ancient Mariner.
BYRON	Isles of Greece, and Selections from Childe Harold, Manfred, and the Hebrew Melodies.
KEATS	Eve of St. Agnes, Ode to a Nightingale, Sonnet on Chapman's Homer.
SHELLEY . .	Euganean Hills, The Cloud, The Skylark, and the Two Sonnets on the Nile.
WORDSWORTH	Laodamia, The Highland Girl, Tintern Abbey, The Cuckoo, The Ode to a Skylark, The Milton Sonnet, The Ode to Duty, and the Ode on the Intimations of Immortality.
MACAULAY .	Horatius.
CLOUGH . . .	Two Ships, the Prologue to the Mari Magno, and the Lawyer's First Tale.
ARNOLD . . .	The Scholar-Gypsy and the Forsaken Merman.
BROWNING . .	Transcript from Euripides (Balaustion's Adventure).
TENNYSON . .	On one, Morte D'Arthur, The Miller's Daughter, and a Selection from the Songs.

